

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### Event Data Recorders

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).**

The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

### Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

### California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/)

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

### **DANGER**

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

### **WARNING**

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

### **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.



This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

## **Safe Driving P. 33**

For Safe Driving P. 34      Seat Belts P. 38      Airbags P. 45

## **Instrument Panel P. 73**

Indicators P. 74      Gauges and Multi-Information Display P. 98

## **Controls P. 117**

Clock P. 118      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 120  
Opening and Closing the Moonroof\* P. 140  
Adjusting the Seats P. 160

## **Features P. 183**

Audio System P. 184      Audio System Basic Operation P. 190, 213  
Customized Features P. 295, 314      HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\* P. 338

## **Driving P. 409**

Before Driving P. 410      Towing a Trailer P. 415  
Refueling P. 482      Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 484

## **Maintenance P. 485**

Before Performing Maintenance P. 486      Maintenance Minder™ P. 489  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 514  
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 527

## **Handling the Unexpected P. 535**

If a Tire Goes Flat P. 536      Power System Won't Start P. 545  
Overheating P. 551      Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 554

## **Information P. 563**

Specifications P. 564      Identification Numbers P. 566  
Emissions Testing P. 569      Warranty Coverages P. 571

# Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 33

Instrument Panel P. 73

Controls P. 117

Features P. 183

Driving P. 409

Maintenance P. 485

Handling the Unexpected P. 535

Information P. 563

Index P. 575

Child Safety P. 58

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 70

Safety Labels P. 71

Opening and Closing the Trunk P. 130  
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 141  
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 167

Security System P. 134

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 137  
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 158  
Climate Control System P. 179

Audio Error Messages P. 283  
*Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink® P. 340, 371

General Information on the Audio System P. 288

When Driving P. 416

Braking P. 463

Parking Your Vehicle P. 475

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 493  
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 516  
Cleaning P. 528

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 506  
12-Volt Battery P. 525  
Accessories and Modifications P. 533

Remote Transmitter Care P. 526

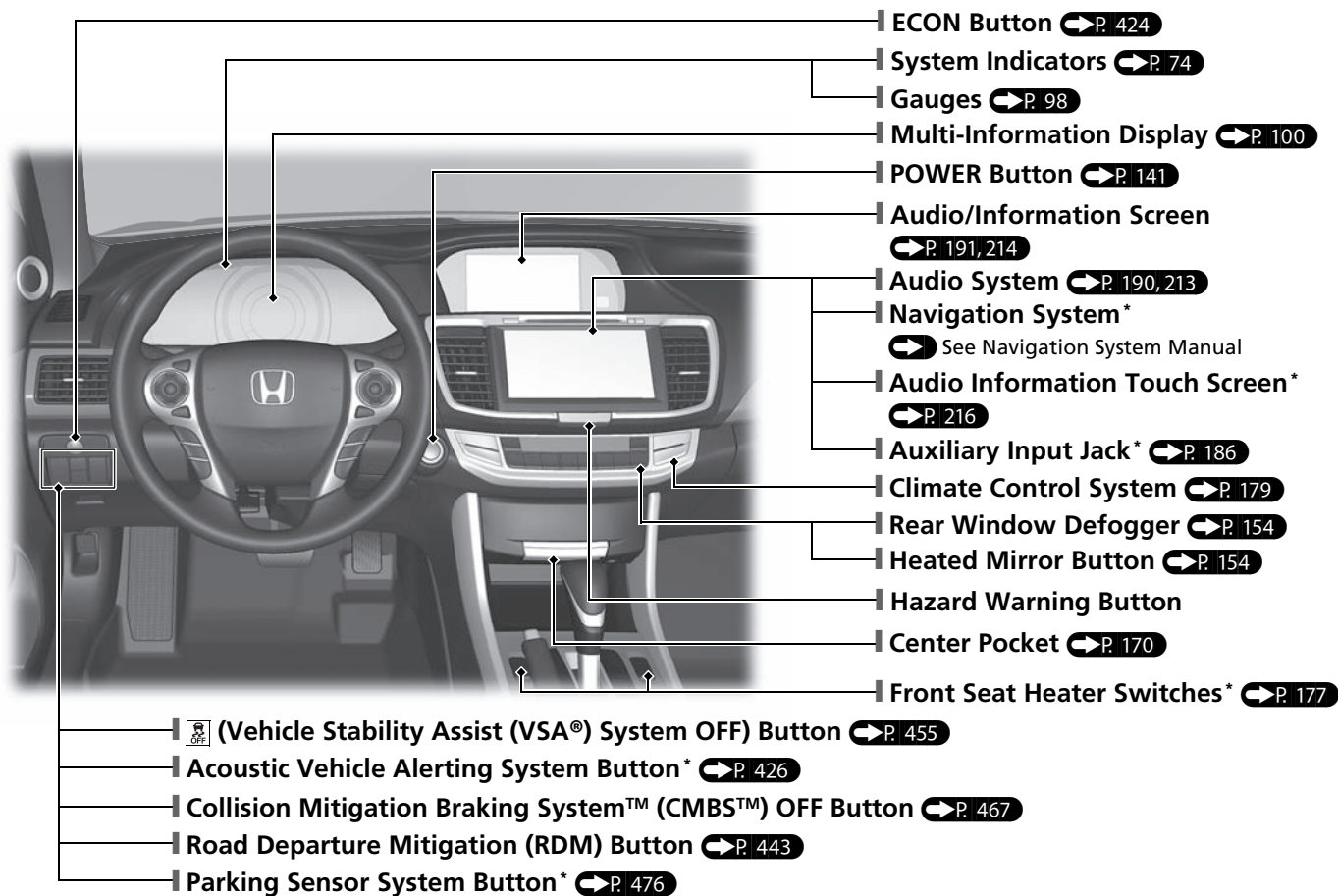
Jump Starting P. 548  
Fuses P. 558

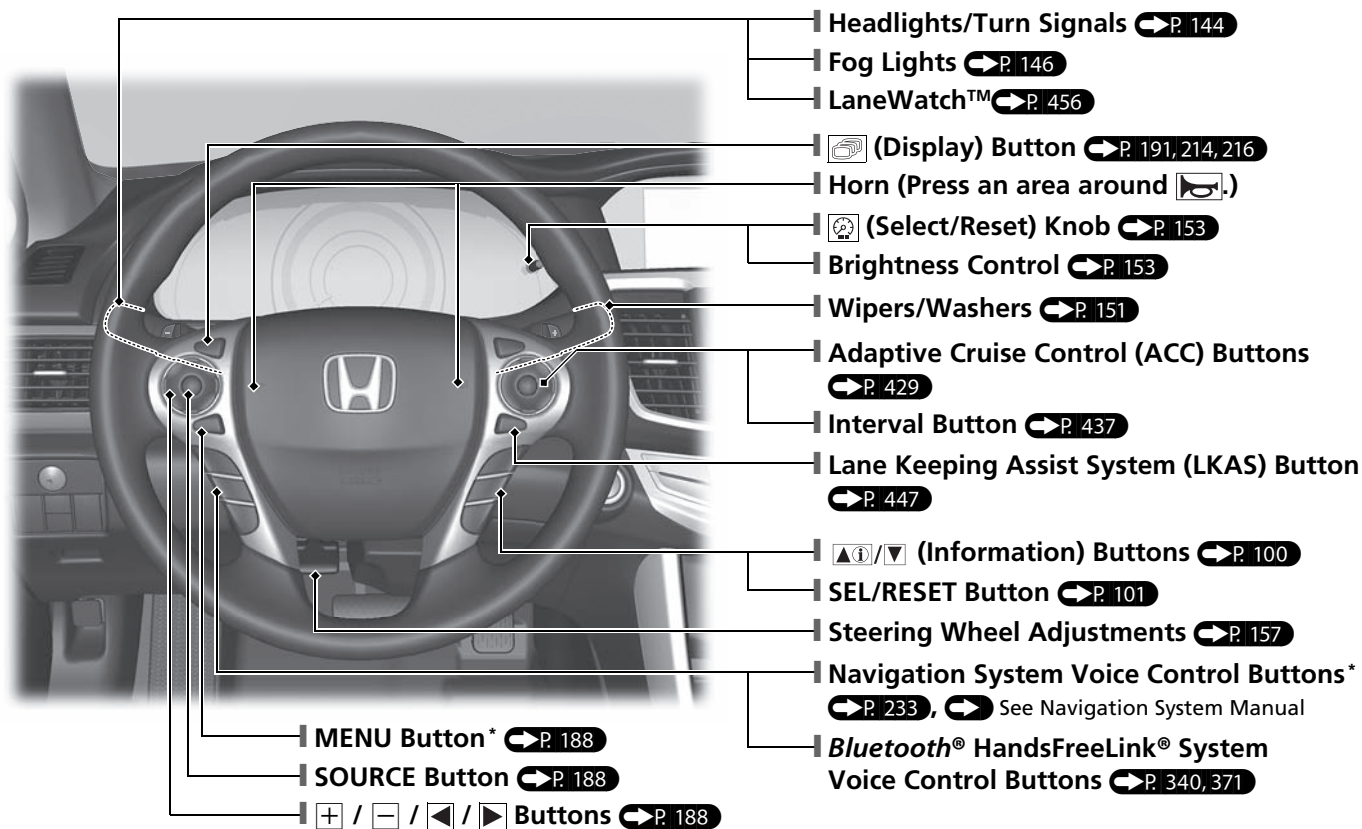
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 550  
Emergency Towing P. 561

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 567  
Authorized Manuals P. 573

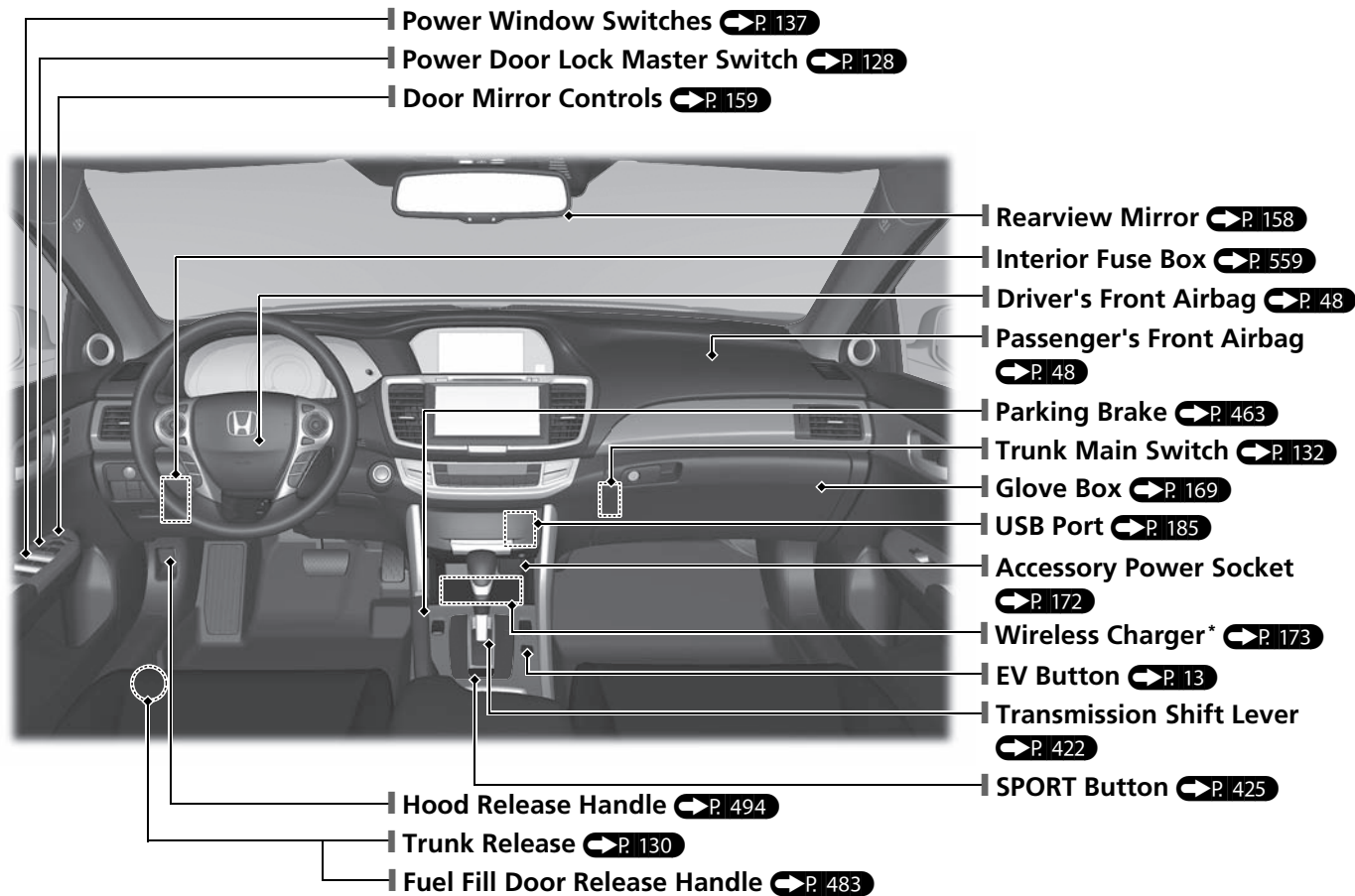
Reporting Safety Defects P. 568  
Customer Service Information P. 574

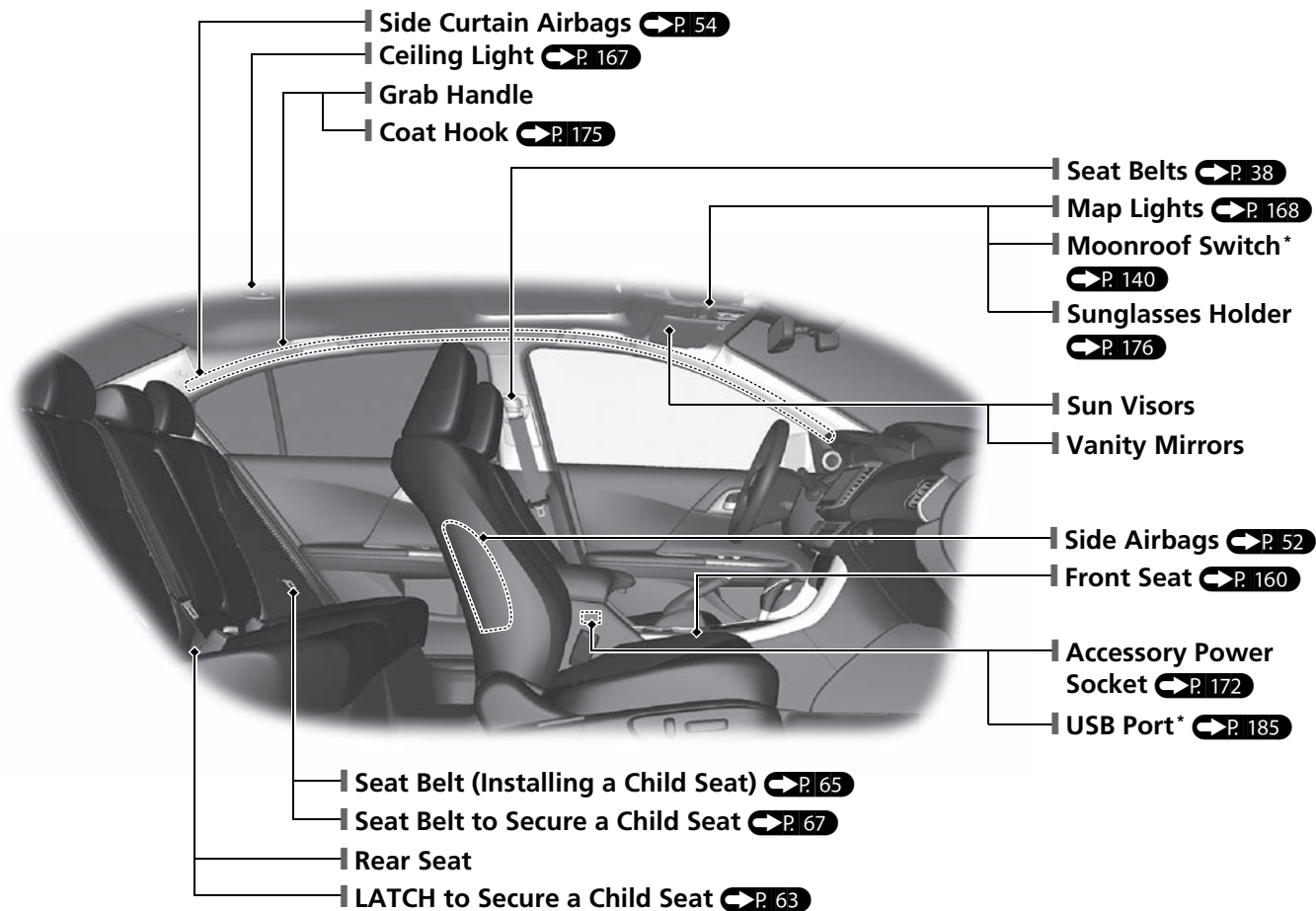
# Visual Index



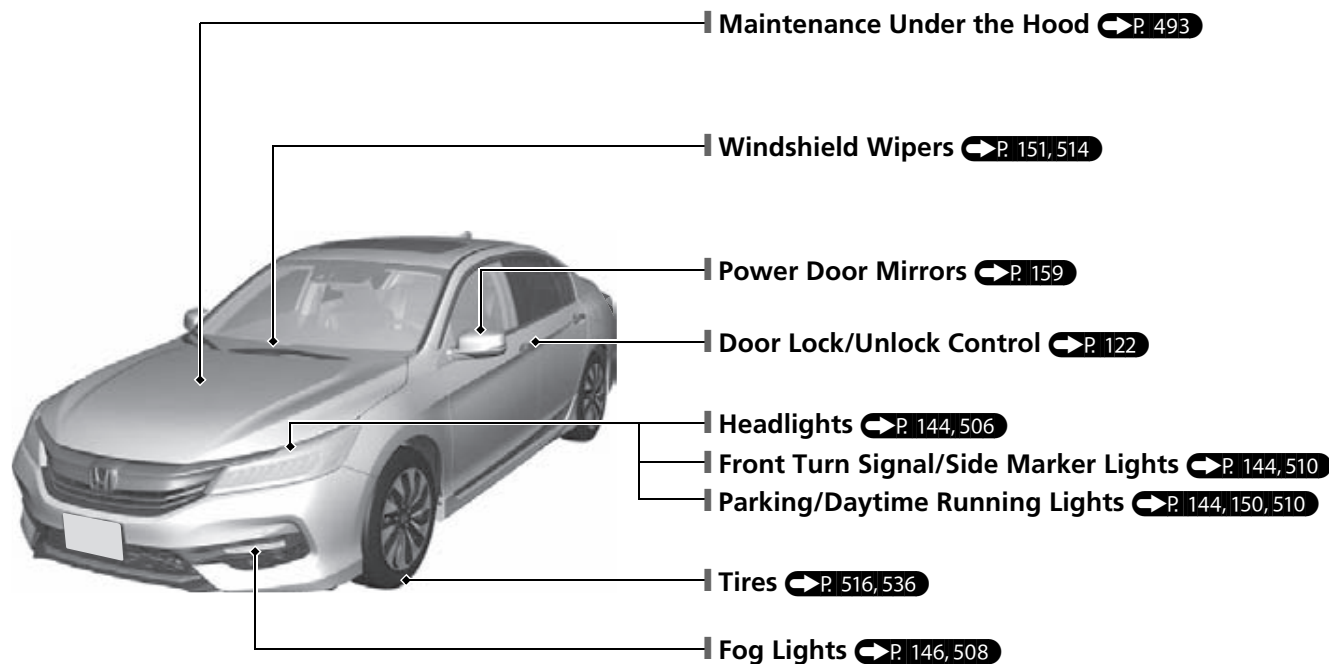


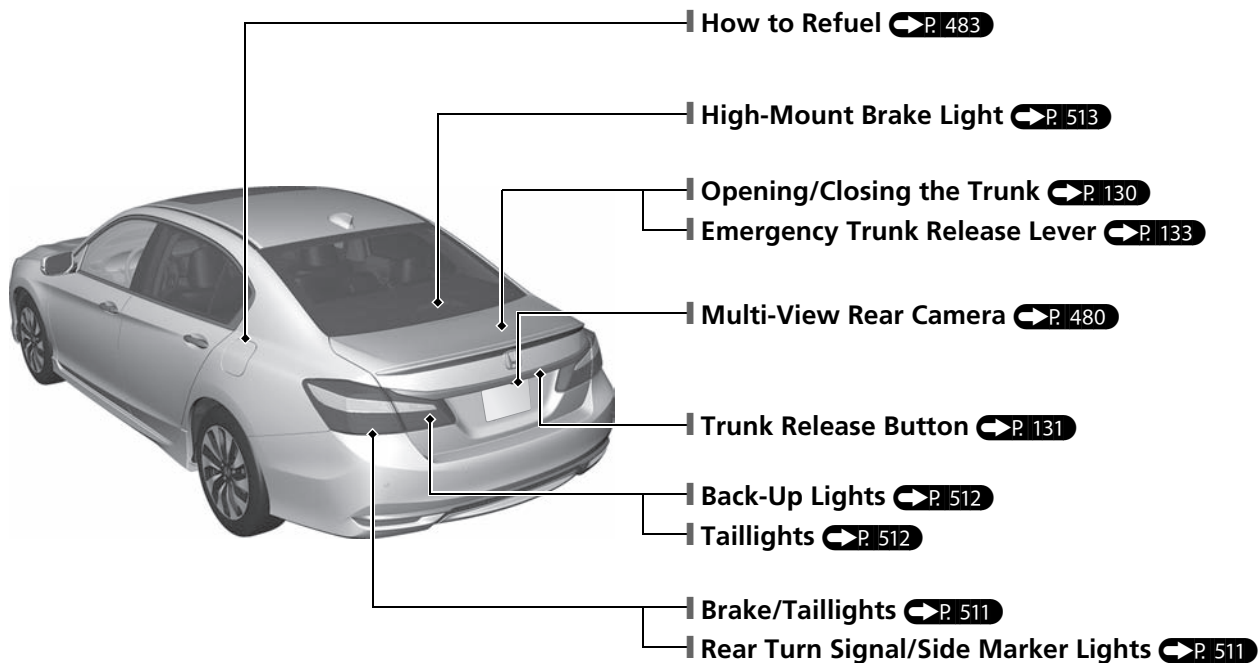
# Visual Index





# Visual Index







# SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mode Drive)

Your SPORT HYBRID i-MMD vehicle uses both an electric motor and a gasoline engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery or internal generator. The High Voltage battery can be charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the gasoline engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it. Under certain circumstances, pressing the **EV** button can manually enable EV (driven only on electricity) mode.

## ● Energy efficiency

As with a gasoline-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the gasoline-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

## ● Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a high voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

# SPORT HYBRID i-MMD SYSTEM MAIN COMPONENTS

**Gasoline Engine**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels under certain driving conditions, and turns the generator.

**Generator**– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the gasoline engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

**Electric Motor**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the gasoline engine in certain conditions, and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

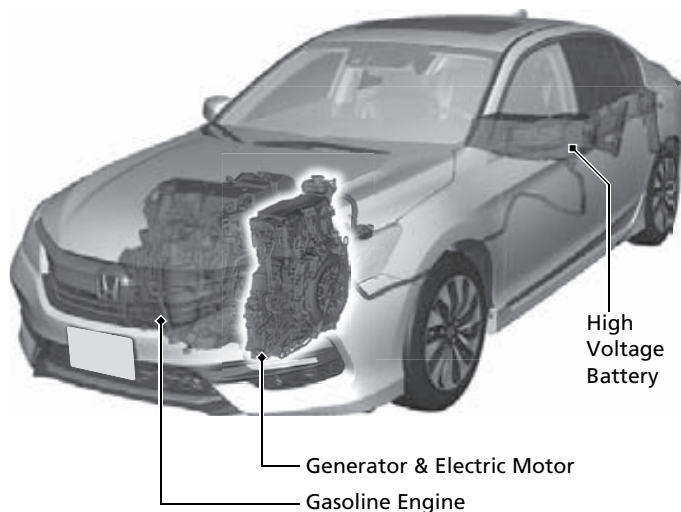
**High Voltage Battery**– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.

Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximize the range of your electric vehicle. ➡ P. 462

**High Voltage Battery Charge Level Indicator**– Displays battery state of charge.

When the indicator:

- Displays two or less segments, EV mode is no longer available.
- Displays eight segments, battery charge level is full.





Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Vehicle Speed	<p>Stopped or driven at low speeds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> </ul>	<p>Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The gasoline engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.</li> </ul>	<p>Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The gasoline engine provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion.</li> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>	<p>Decelerating, without accelerator being depressed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric Motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Gasoline Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
Battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

## EV Button

EV mode is enabled by pressing the **EV** button near the shift lever.

The **EV** mode indicator comes on in the instrument panel when EV mode is enabled.

Press the **EV** button again to switch back to HV mode.

Some conditions, such as a low High Voltage battery level and a high vehicle speed, may keep the system from manually switching into EV mode. The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display with the button pressed when EV mode is disabled.

Shifts in vehicle, driving or road conditions may automatically cancel EV mode and switch back to HV mode.

A message will appear on the multi-information display and EV mode may be canceled automatically when:

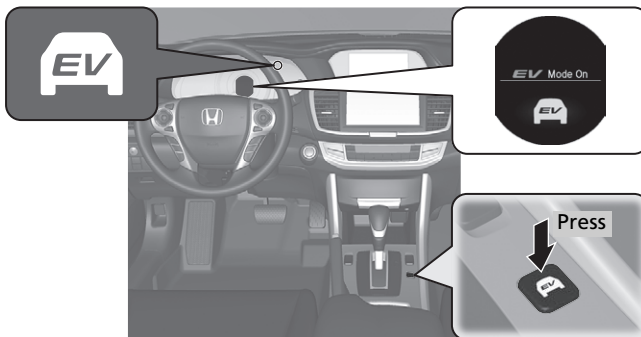
- The High Voltage battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- Your vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h) while the engine is in warming-up operation.
- You fully depress the accelerator pedal.
- You are driving on hilly road.

➤ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** ➡ P. 88

### Canadian models

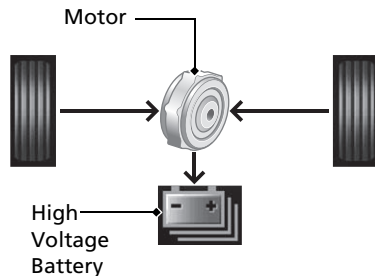
In EV mode, the acoustic vehicle alerting system is on.

➤ **Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System** ➡ P. 426



### ● Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a gasoline-powered vehicle. This function is enhanced when the shift lever is moved to **B**.

### ● Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's gasoline engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.

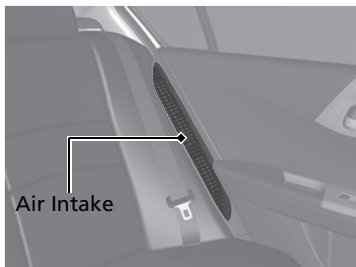
### ● Sounds Unique to the SPORT HYBRID i-MMD System

When you first start driving this vehicle, you likely will hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you first turn on the power system, while driving, and just after parking. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognize them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

# Safety Precautions



Do not cover the air intake.



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

## Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. If the High Voltage system needs maintenance or repair, it should be performed at a dealer.

## If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.

- ▶ If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

- ▶ The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid any skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally touch it, flush your eyes or skin with a large quantity of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

- ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

- Anytime the vehicle is damaged in an accident, have it repaired by a dealer.

## Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

The emergency shutdown system may activate when the vehicle is impacted by some incident such as a crash. When this system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and your vehicle no longer will move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

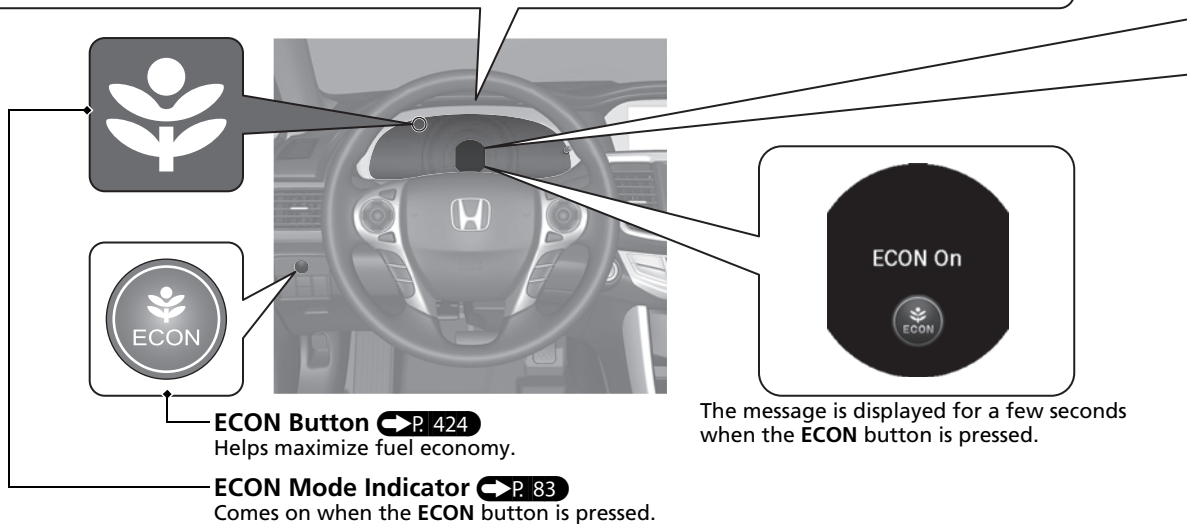
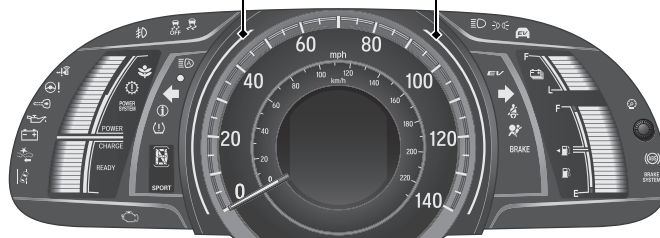
Honda collects and recycles High Voltage batteries used in its vehicles – consult a dealer for more information.

# Eco Assist® System ➡ P. 424

## Ambient Meter

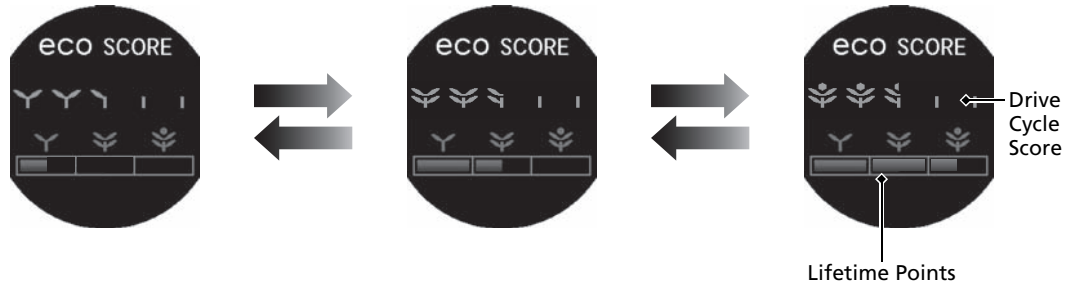
- Changes color to reflect your driving style.  
Green: Fuel efficient driving  
Blue green: Moderate acceleration/ deceleration  
Blue: Aggressive acceleration/ deceleration
- The ambient meter color changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

Ambient Meter



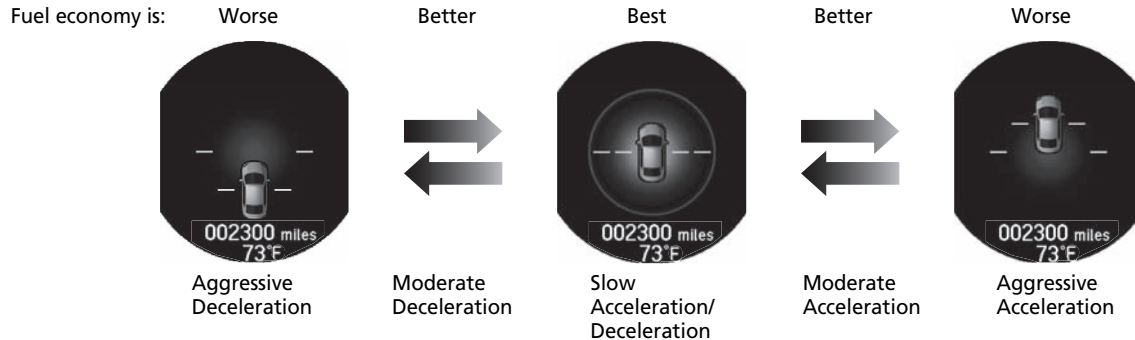
## Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

- Comes on when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).



## Eco Drive Display P. 105

- Keep the vehicle icon near the center of the circle.





# Safe Driving ➡ P. 33

## Airbags ➡ P. 45

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety ➡ P. 58

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P. 70

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts ➡ P. 38

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist ➡ P. 37

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.













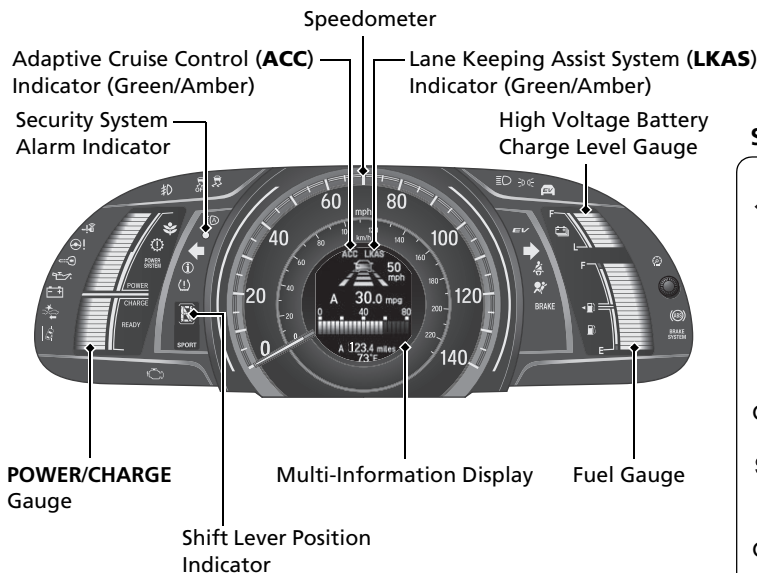
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel P. 73




## Gauges P. 98 / Multi-Information Display P. 100 / System Indicators P. 74

### System Indicators





-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
-  VSA® OFF Indicator
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Smart Entry System Indicator
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  System Message Indicator
-  ECON mode Indicator
- READY** **READY** Indicator
- POWER SYSTEM** **POWER SYSTEM** Indicator
- SPORT** **SPORT** Mode Indicator











### System Indicators

-  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator
-  Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator

### Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator
-  Auto High-Beam Indicator (Green)\*

### System Indicators

-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
- BRAKE** U.S. Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  **Canada**
- BRAKE SYSTEM** U.S. Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  **Canada**
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- EV** **EV** Indicator
-  **EV** Mode Indicator

\* Not available on all models

# Controls P. 117




## Clock P. 118

### Models with navigation system

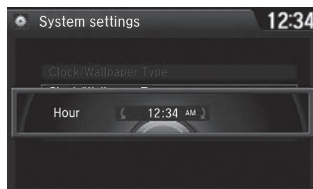
The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.







### Models with two displays



- 1 Select , then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting  / .
- 4 Select **OK** to set the time.

### Models with one display



- 1 Enter the **Clock Adjustment** screen.  
 **Adjusting the Clock**  P. 118
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .

## POWER Button P. 141

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



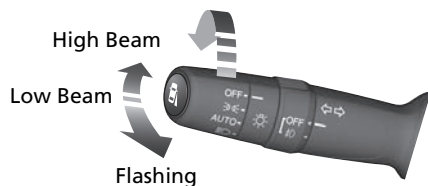
## Turn Signals ➡ P. 144

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights ➡ P. 144

Light Control Switches



## Wipers and Washers

➡ P. 151

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

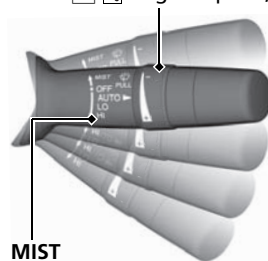
Adjustment Ring

[-]: Low Sensitivity\*<sup>1</sup>

[-] [W]: Lower speed, fewer sweeps\*<sup>2</sup>

[+]: High Sensitivity\*<sup>1</sup>

[+] [W]: Higher speed, more sweeps\*<sup>2</sup>



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

**MIST**  
**OFF**

**AUTO**\*<sup>1</sup>: Wiper speed varies automatically

**INT**\*<sup>2</sup>: Low speed with intermittent

**LO**: Low speed wipe

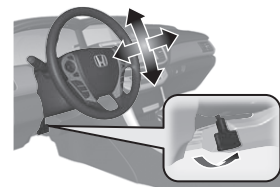
**HI**: High speed wipe

\*<sup>1</sup>: Vehicle with auto wiper

\*<sup>2</sup>: Vehicle without auto wiper

## Steering Wheel ➡ P. 157

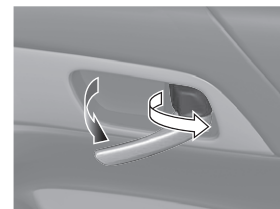
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

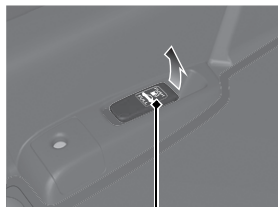
➡ P. 126

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



- Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

## Trunk ➡ P. 130



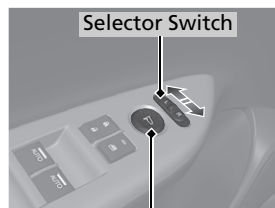
Trunk Release

- To unlock and open the trunk:
  - Pull the trunk release.
  - Press the trunk release button on the remote transmitter or the smart entry remote.
  - Press the trunk release button on the trunk lid.

## Power Door Mirrors

➡ P. 159

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.

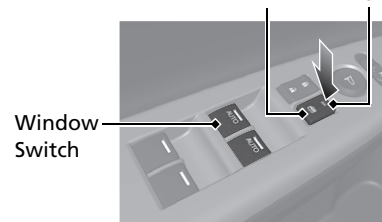


Adjustment Switch



## Power Windows ➡ P. 137

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Power Window Lock Button      Indicator

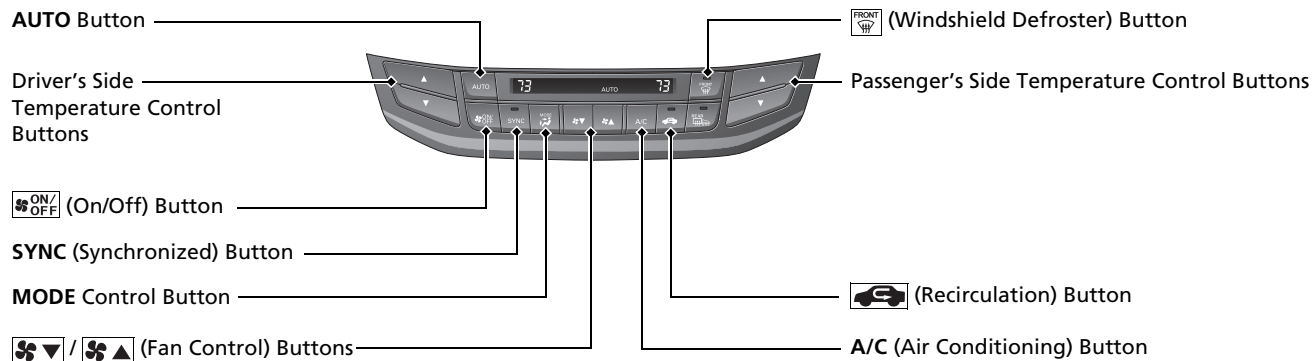






# Climate Control System ➡ P. 179

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windshield.

## Models with navigation system

The climate control system is voice operable. ➡ P. 233

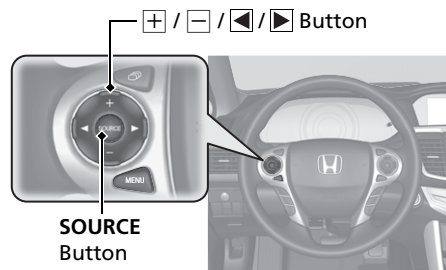


-  Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the center console.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the center console.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.

# Features P. 183

## Audio Remote Controls

 P. 188



- **+ / - Button**

Press to adjust the volume up/down.

- **SOURCE Button**

**Models with one display**

FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→

Bluetooth® Audio→Pandora®\*→AUX

**Models with two displays**

FM→AM→SiriusXM®\*→CD→USB→iPod→

Pandora®\*→Bluetooth® Audio→Audio

Apps

- **< / > Button**

Radio: Press to change the preset station.

Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

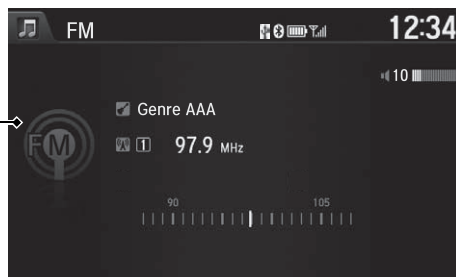
CD/USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.

# Audio System ➡ P. 190, 213

Models with one display ➡ P. 190

Audio/Information Screen



CD Button

FM/AM Button

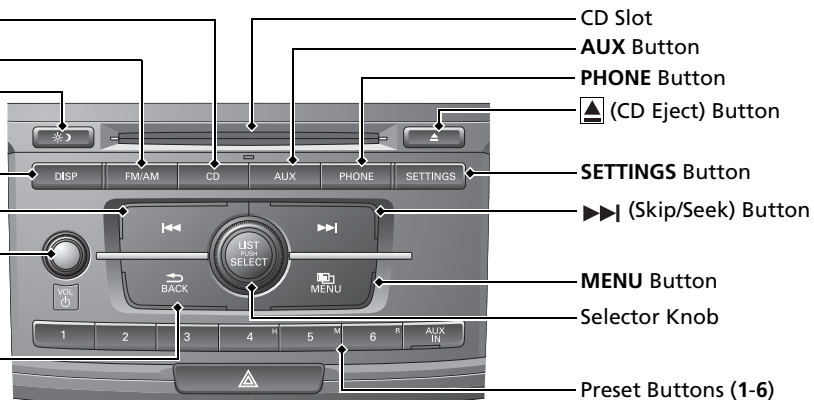
☀️🌙 (Day/Night) Button

DISP Button

⏮️ (Skip/Seek) Button

VOL/🔊 (Volume/Power) Knob

BACK Button



CD Slot

AUX Button

PHONE Button

⏮️ (CD Eject) Button

SETTINGS Button

⏭️ (Skip/Seek) Button

MENU Button

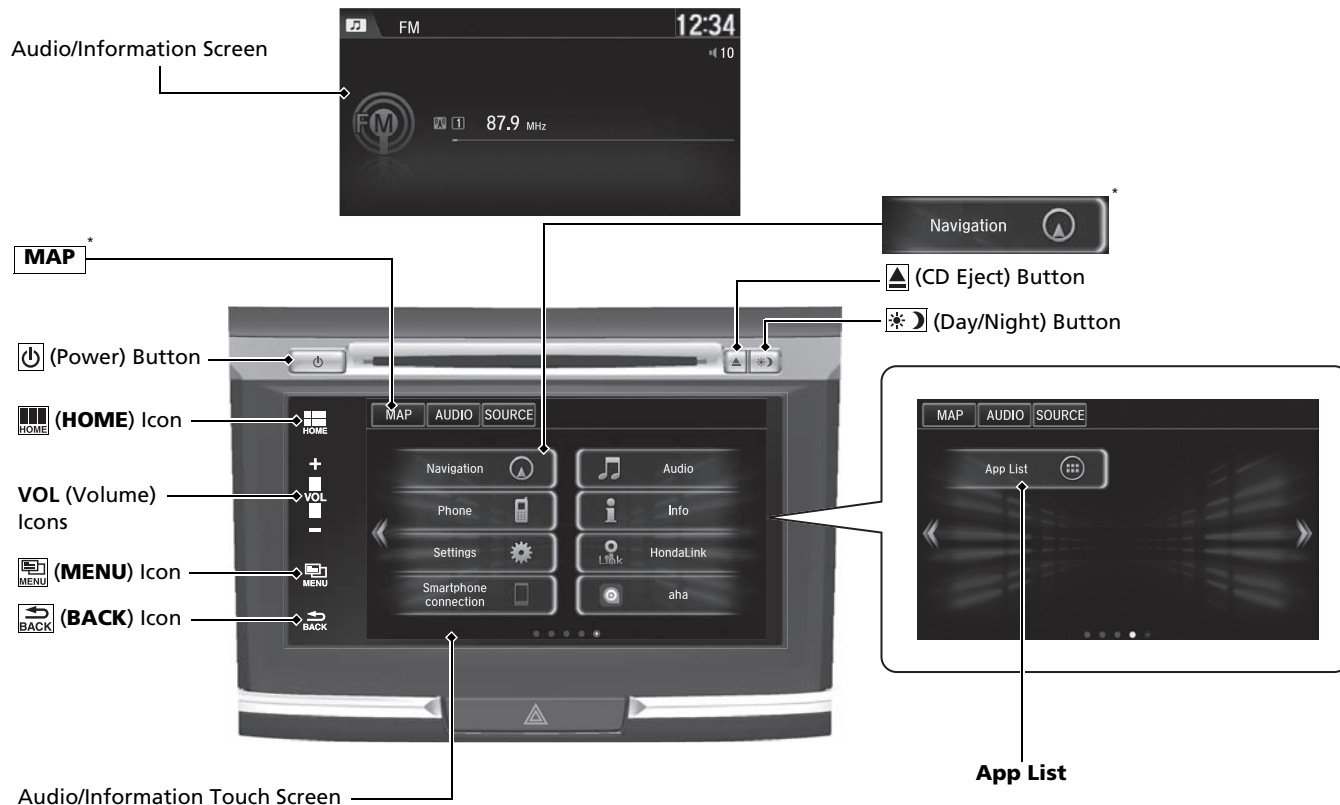
Selector Knob

Preset Buttons (1-6)



Models with two displays ➡ P.213

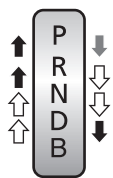
For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual



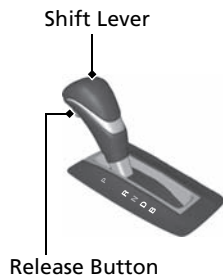
# Driving ➡ P. 409

## Transmission ➡ P. 422

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.
- **Shifting**



- Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.
- Press the release button to move the shift lever.
- Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



**P Park**  
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

**R Reverse**  
Used when reversing.

**N Neutral**  
Propulsion power is not transmitted to wheels.

**D Drive**  
Used for normal driving.

**B Drive (B)**

- Used when driving down a long hill.
- Used to increase regenerative braking.



**READY Indicator**  
On: You can start to drive.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) ➡ P. 454

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- To turn VSA® on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you turn on the power system.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button ➡ P. 467

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ➡ P. 458

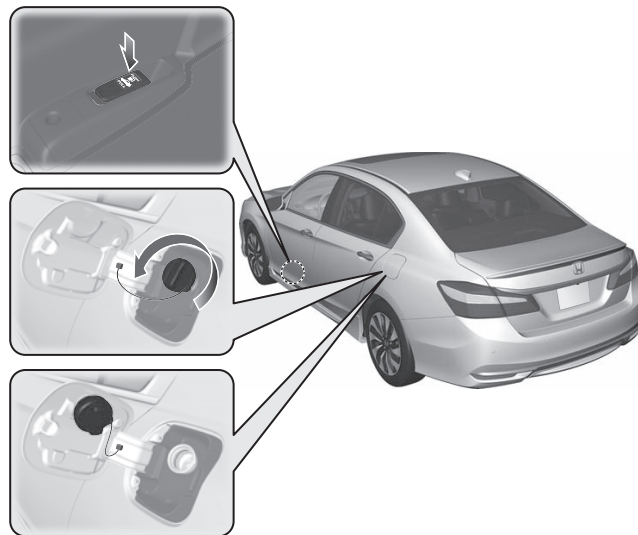
- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

## Refueling ➡ P. 482

**Fuel recommendation:** Unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number 87 or higher

**Fuel tank capacity:** 14.8 US gal (56 L)

- 1 Push the fuel fill door release handle.
- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Maintenance ➡ P. 485

## Under the Hood ➡ P. 493

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, inverter coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



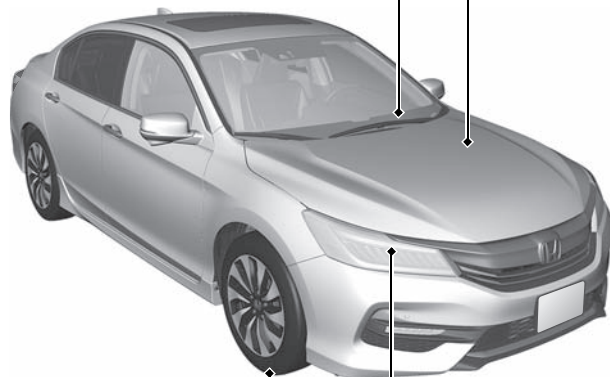
- 2 Locate the hood latch lever, pull the lever up, and lift up the hood.



- 3 When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades ➡ P. 514

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



## Tires ➡ P. 516

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

## Lights ➡ P. 506

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected P. 535

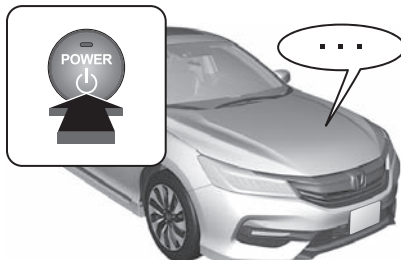
## Flat Tire P. 536

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tire using the tire repair kit in the trunk.



## Power System Won't Start P. 545

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating P. 551

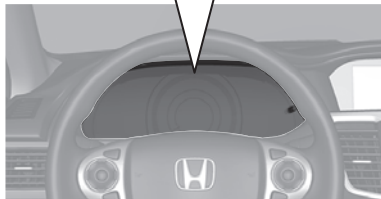
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the power system cool down.



## Indicators Come On

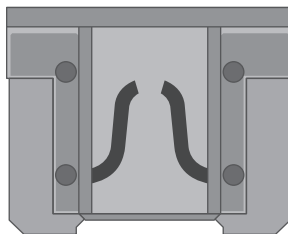
 P. 554

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P. 558

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing

 P. 561

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

Canadian models

**Q** The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
  - Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **POWER** button at the same time.



**Q** The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

- A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

- A** This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

- A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, push the lever to the unlock position.



---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors using a remote transmitter?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

---

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## **For Safe Driving**

Important Safety Precautions .....	34
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	36
Safety CheckList.....	37

## **Seat Belts**

About Your Seat Belts .....	38
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	41
Seat Belt Inspection.....	44

## **Airbags**

Airbag System Components.....	45
Types of Airbags .....	48
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	48

Side Airbags .....	52
Side Curtain Airbags .....	54
Airbag System Indicators.....	55
Airbag Care .....	57

## **Child Safety**

Protecting Child Passengers .....	58
Safety of Infants and Small Children .....	60
Safety of Larger Children .....	68

## **Exhaust Gas Hazard**

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	70
--------------------------	----

## **Safety Labels**

Label Locations .....	71
-----------------------	----



The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

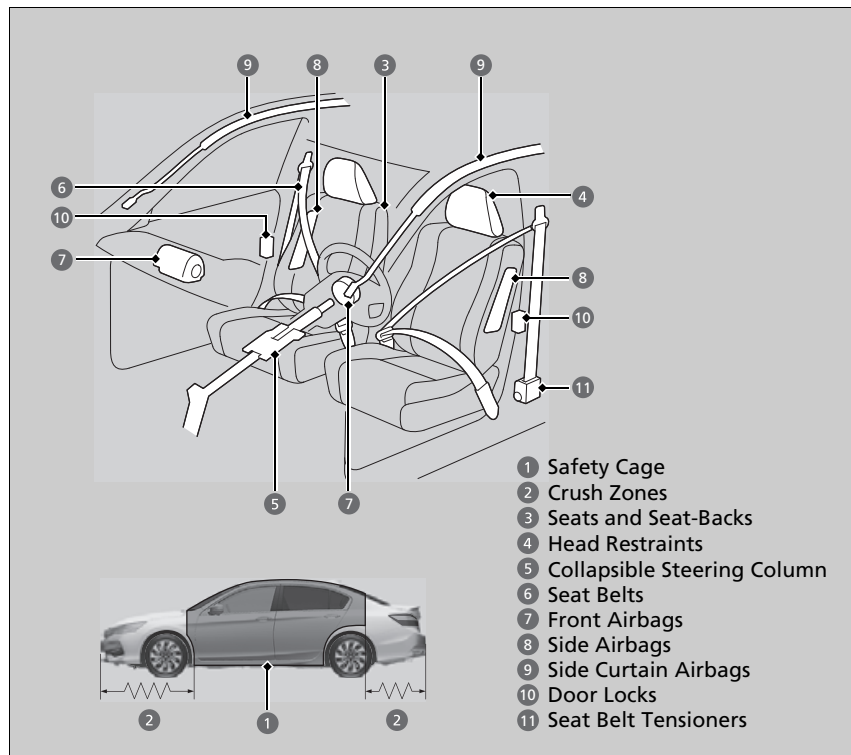
**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety CheckList

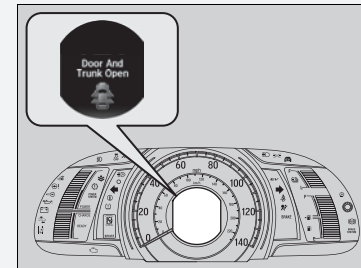
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors are closed and locked. Locking the doors helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door.
  - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 126
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 160
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 163
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 58

### ➤ Safety CheckList

If the **Door Open** or **Door And Trunk Open** message appears on the multi-information display, a door and/or the trunk is not completely closed. Close all doors and the trunk tightly until the message disappears.

➤ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 88



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body. The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➤ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 65

### » About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

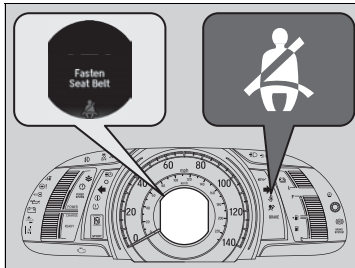
The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder



Your vehicle monitors front seat belt use. If the power mode is set to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will also periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and/or the front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

## ►► About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## ►► Seat Belt Reminder

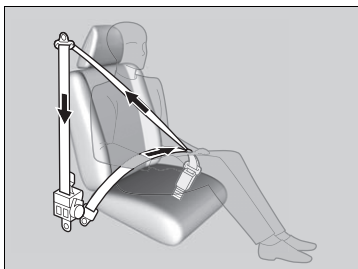
The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON. When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound. The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

► **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 58

## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



## ►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

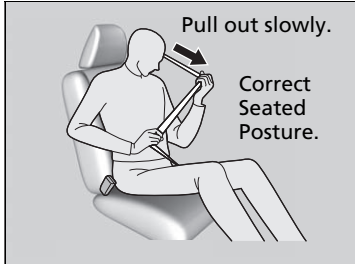
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

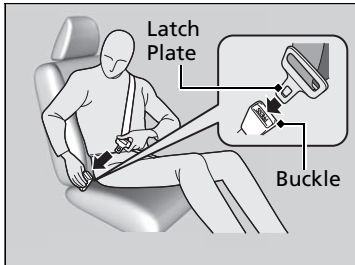
## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

### ✎ Adjusting the Seats P. 160



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ✎ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

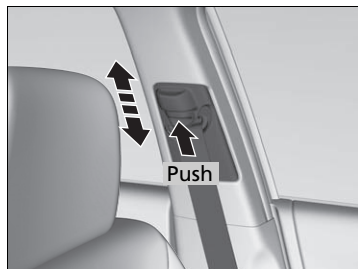




3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

## ► Fastening a Seat Belt

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

## ► Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

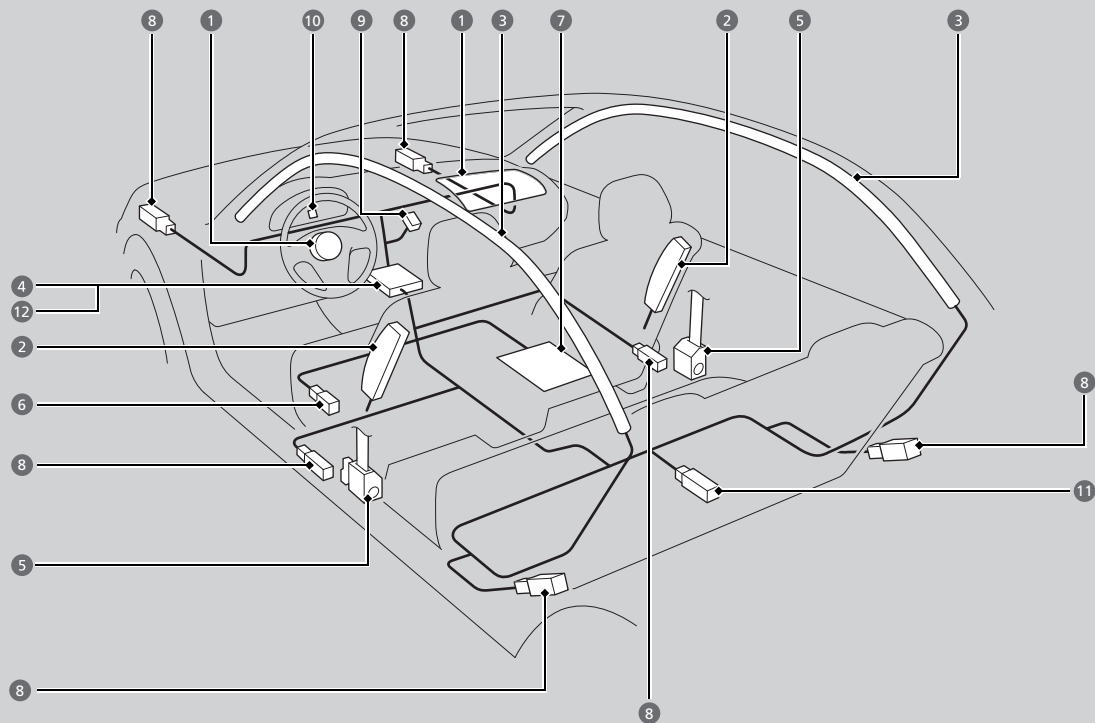
### ►► Seat Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

## Airbag System Components



The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

- 1 Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- 2 Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- 3 Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- 4 An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit records such information.
- 5 Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.
- 6 A driver's seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.
- 7 Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).
- 8 Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- 9 An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- 10 An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- 11 Safing Sensor
- 12 A rollover sensor that detects whether the vehicle is about to roll over.

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

### **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

#### Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

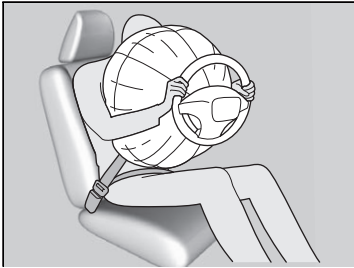
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ▣ How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.



### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and, in vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side airbags and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

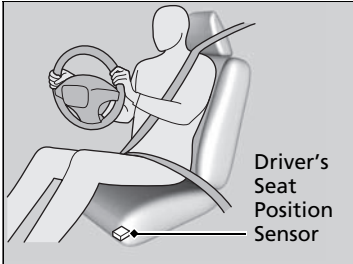
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

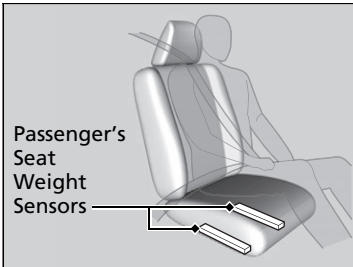
## Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

If the seat is too far forward, the airbag inflates with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors.

Although we recommend against carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of a child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn off the passenger's front airbag.

### Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver's seating position.

For both advanced front airbags to work properly:

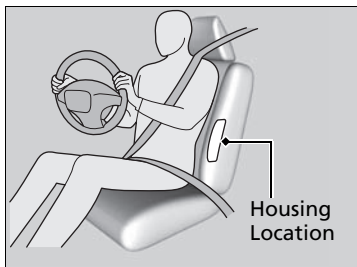
- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not place any cover over the passenger side dashboard.

**Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator**  
P. 56

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

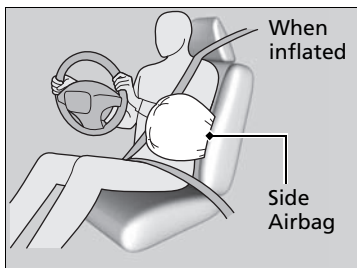
### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger side, the airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

**■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

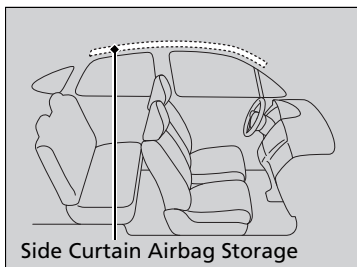
**■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe**

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## Side Curtain Airbags

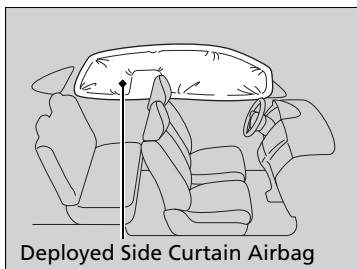
The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Side Curtain Airbags

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

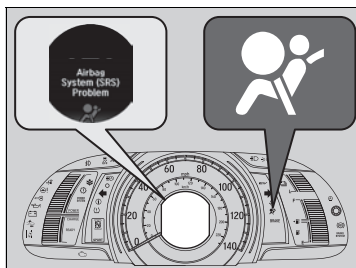
One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

In this case, the side curtain airbags will deploy slightly after the front airbags.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

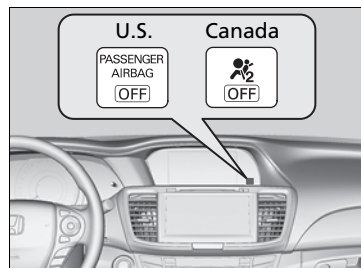
►► Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the front passenger's weight sensors detect 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Infants and small children should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

► **Child Safety** P. 58

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

## ► Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no front passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors, such as:

- An object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- A child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the front passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and goes off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

#### ✖ Airbag Care

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

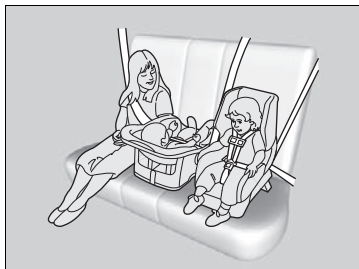


## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.**

**Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.**

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

#### ► Protecting Child Passengers


### **WARNING**

**Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.**

**Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.**

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

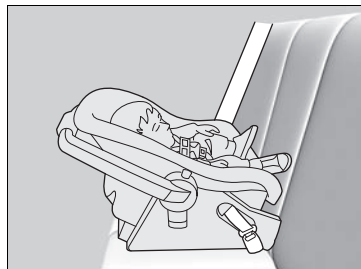
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

 **Safety Labels** P. 71

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

■ **Airbags** P. 45

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

### ►► Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ **WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

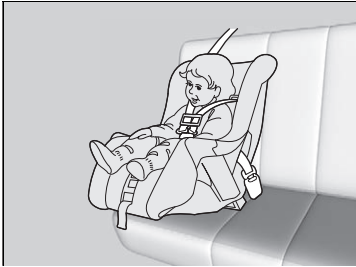
Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child seat manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat.



### ■ Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ►► Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

## ■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

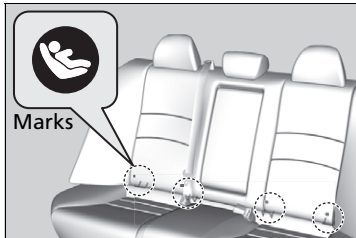
## ►► Selecting a Child Seat

Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

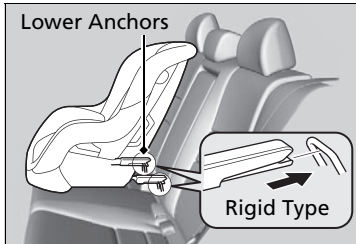
LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

## ■ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

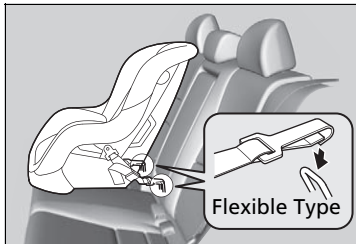


1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.

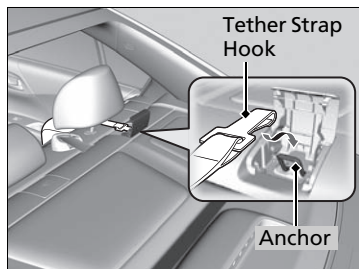


2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

► When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.



*Continued*



3. Open the tether anchor cover behind the head restraint.
4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

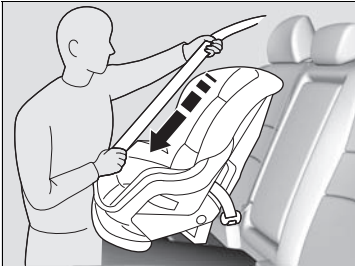
#### ► Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

## ■ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.  
► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.  
► If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.



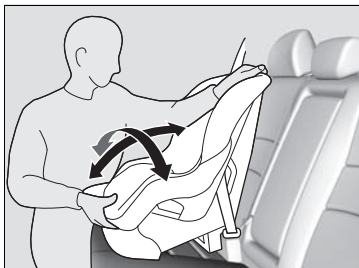
5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.  
► When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

## ▣ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

*Continued*



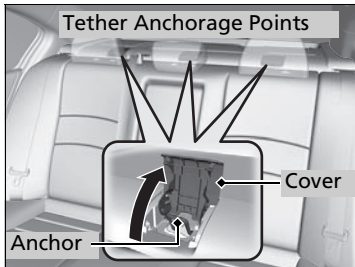


6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

#### ► Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

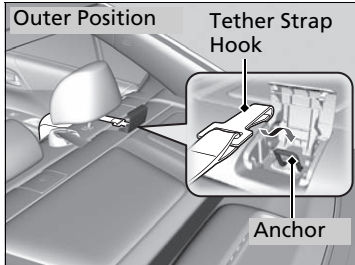
To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether

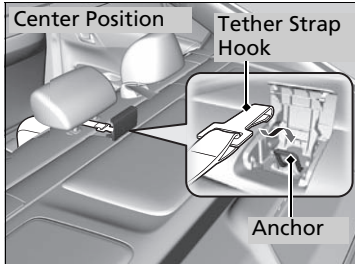


A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position. A child seat that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

**1.** Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.



**2.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.



**3.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.  
**4.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

## ► Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.

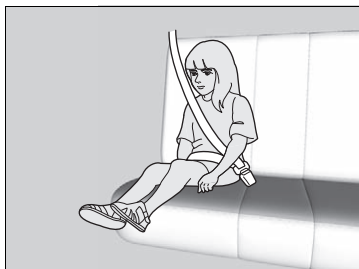
## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ►► Safety of Larger Children

#### ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## ■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in a rear seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

### »» Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.


## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not turn the power system on with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after turning the power system on.

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.

### U.S. models

**EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS**



- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
- The back seat is the safest place for children
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Always use seat belts and child restraints
- See owner's manual for more information about air bags

## Canadian models

**CAUTION**

- TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:**
- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
  - DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
  - DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
  - DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
  - SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

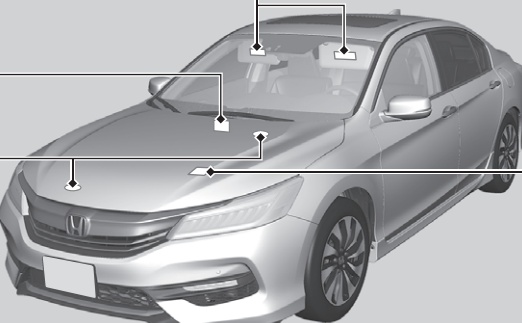
**PRECAUTIONS:**

- POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
- POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION
- MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ
- TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
- N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR
- ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR
- LE COUSSIN DU PASSENGER.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ
- PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN
- GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN
- GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
- Lisez le Guide Utilisateur pour de
- PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS

U.S. models only

This Vehicle is Equipped with  
Advanced Air Bags

**Even with Advanced Air Bags**  
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.  
The back seat is the safest place for children.  
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.  
Always use seat belts and child restraints.  
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

Radiator  
Cap

## High Voltage System Components

## U.S. models



 **HIGH VOLTAGE**  
You can be killed or hurt.  
Do not disconnect, open,

**When you remove and attach the PCU**  
When you remove and attach the PCU, conduct maintenance according to the service manual.

## Canadian models



**When you remove and attach the PCU**  
When you remove and attach the PCU, conduct maintenance according to the service manual.

**Lorsque vous retirez et attachez le PCU**  
Lorsque vous retirez et attachez le PCU, effectuez l'entretien selon le manuel de service.






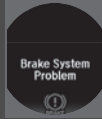



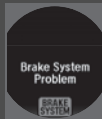
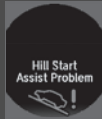
# Instrument Panel







This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.




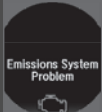
















<b>Indicators</b> .....	74
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages.....	88
<b>Gauges and Multi-Information Display</b>	
Gauges.....	98
Multi-Information Display .....	100














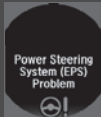
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
  (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 556</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber)</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.</li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On</b> P. 556</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	  
  (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	 





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
<b>POWER SYSTEM</b>	<b>POWER SYSTEM</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.</li> <li>Comes on when the High Voltage battery temperature becomes high while the battery is being charged.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
<b>READY</b>	<b>READY</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.</li> </ul>	 <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 416	
<b>EV</b>	<b>EV</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.</li> </ul>	—	—
	<b>EV Mode</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is in EV mode.</li> </ul>  <b>SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mode Drive)</b> P. 10	—	









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 554</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the power system is on or after several seconds if the vehicle did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system.</li> <li>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Testing of Readiness Codes</b> P. 569</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the power system for 10 minutes or more, and wait for the engine to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 555</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on.</li> <li>• Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 554</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift lever position.</li> </ul>	 <b>Shifting</b> P. 422	
	Transmission Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	
	<b>SPORT</b> Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>SPORT</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>SPORT Mode</b> P. 425	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.</li> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 39</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.2 U.S. gal./8.2 Liter left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.</li> </ul> <p>➡ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 465</p>	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	




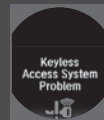



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when VSA® is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System</b> P. 454</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you deactivate VSA®.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>VSA® OFF Button</b> P. 455</li> </ul>	—
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 556</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on when:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated.   <b>TPMS Calibration</b> P. 458</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.  <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 510, 511</li> </ul>	—
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in <b>AUTO</b> when the exterior lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	—
	Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—





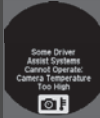



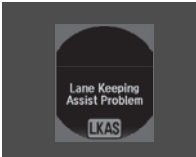



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select ON again.</li> <li>• <b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	—
 Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	 <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 134	—










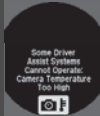
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>ECON</b> button.</li> </ul>	➤ <b>ECON Button</b> P. 424	
	Smart Entry System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
	Auto High-Beam Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	➤ <b>Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*</b> P. 147	

\* Not available on all models


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</li> </ul>	









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> <li>ACC has been automatically canceled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul>	
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 429</p>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the temperature inside the camera is too high.</li> <li>ACC has been automatically canceled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li><b>Goes off</b> - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the <b>MAIN</b> button can resume the system.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</p> <p>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 429</p>	


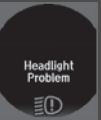


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 447	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A multi-information display message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)</b> P. 467</li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.   <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)</b> P. 467</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</li> </ul>	





# Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages






The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the  (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

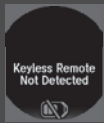




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.</li></ul>	 <b>Tighten Fuel Cap Message</b> P. 555
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. ► Consequently, <b>Maintenance Due Now</b> and <b>Maintenance Past Due</b> follow.</li></ul>	 <b>Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display</b> P. 490
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li></ul>	 <b>Overheating</b> P. 551
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature is near its upper limit.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Drive slowly to prevent overheating.</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if any door or the trunk is not completely closed.</li><li>The beeper sounds and the message comes on if any door or the trunk is opened while driving.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Goes off when all doors and the trunk are closed.</li></ul>











Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with LED headlights</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the low beam headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - The low beam headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with auto high-beam</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manually operate the headlight switch.</li> <li>If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with auto high-beam</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the area around the camera on the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, etc.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>If the message does not disappear after cleaning the lens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>


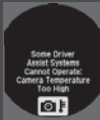








Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>Models with parking sensor system</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the acoustic vehicle alerting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 108</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you try to go to <b>Vehicle Settings</b> from the multi-information display while the audio/information screen * or audio/information touch screen * shows the same menu.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select either display to customize a setting. You cannot have <b>Vehicle Settings</b> displayed on the multi-information display and audio/information screen simultaneously.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 108, 295, 314</p>







Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li> </ul>	<p>➡ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 416</p>
<p>Canadian models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>POWER</b> button.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you push the <b>POWER</b> button to turn the power system off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<p><b>U.S. models</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the shift lever to <b>P</b>. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.</li> </ul> <p><b>Canadian models</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Push the <b>POWER</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>POWER</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li> </ul>




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Smart Entry Remote Reminder</b> P. 143</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 526</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to turn on the power system or the key is not within operating range to turn on the power system. A beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the smart entry remote in front of the <b>POWER</b> button to be touched with. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>POWER Button</b> P. 141</li> <li>➤ <b>If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 546</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears three seconds after you bring the smart entry remote in front of the <b>POWER</b> button when <b>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</b> appears. <b>To Start Vehicle: Brake + Push</b> appears sequentially.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Changing the Power Mode</b> P. 141</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the radiator system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive slowly to prevent overheating and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the 12-volt battery.</li> <li>• Appears when the 12-volt battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Checking the 12-Volt Battery</b> P. 525</li> <li>• <b>Appears along with the 12-volt battery charging system indicator</b> - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption.   <b>If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 554</li> </ul>
<div>Canadian models</div> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the washer fluid gets low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill the washer fluid.   <b>Refilling Window Washer Fluid</b> P. 505</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears for about three seconds when ACC has been automatically canceled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/+</b> button.   <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 429</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).   <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 429   <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)</b> P. 467</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message appears again after you cleaned the area around the camera.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the temperature inside the camera is too high.</li> <li>ACC/LKAS has been automatically canceled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li><b>Goes off</b> - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the <b>MAIN/LKAS</b> button can resume the system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 427</li> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 429</li> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 447</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p><b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.</li> <li>The color of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 447</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p><b>Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>When you selected <b>Warning Only</b></b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>When you selected <b>Normal</b> or <b>Wide</b></b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.</li> <li>The color of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System</b> P. 443</li> </ul> </li> <li>You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. <b>Normal</b>, <b>Wide</b>, and <b>Warning Only</b> can be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 108, 295, 314</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA®, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.   <b>Indicators</b> P. 74</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the power system is on by smart entry remote.</li> </ul>	 <b>Remote Engine Start</b> P. 418

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power system temperature is high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>Park in a safe place, and cool the system down.   <b>Overheating</b> P. 551</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>Goes off once you start driving as the High Voltage battery warms up.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the 12-volt battery charging system indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>Contact a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is too low to operate (approx. -22°F [-30°C] or below).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can start the engine and use the climate control system to warm up the interior, which will also warm the High Voltage battery enough for you to drive the vehicle.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the High Voltage battery and other system control temperatures are too low to operate (approx. -40°F [-40°C] or below).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.</li> <li>Consult a dealer.</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Hybrid System Problem Power Reduced.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the power system is in diagnostic mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may notice a decrease in available power. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>As a result of diagnostics, the <b>POWER SYSTEM</b> indicator may come on.   <b>POWER SYSTEM Indicator</b> P. 75</li> </ul>
 <p>EV Mode Not Available Ambient Temperature Too Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you failed to select EV mode or EV mode is automatically canceled.</li> <li>The cause may be shown with the following message: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Ambient Temperature Too Low</b></li> <li>- <b>Battery Charge Too Low</b></li> <li>- <b>Engine Too Cold</b></li> <li>- <b>Cabin Being Heated</b></li> <li>- <b>Speed Too High</b></li> <li>- <b>Hard Acceleration Requested</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EV mode is available once the condition is improved or the cause that canceled EV mode is cleared.</li> </ul>



## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, **POWER/CHARGE** gauge, High Voltage battery charge level gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

### ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

#### ⌕ Fuel Gauge

##### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **[E]**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

## ■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

### ■ Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

### ■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

## ■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

### ■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charging remains the same.

## Multi-Information Display

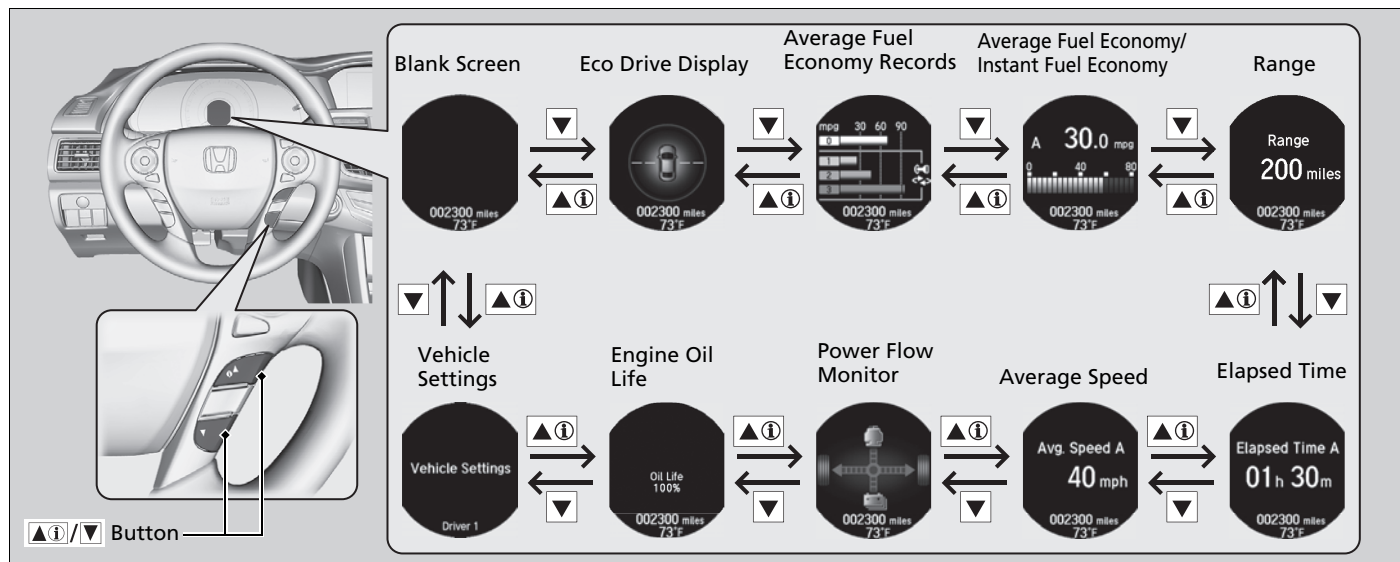
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Switching the Display

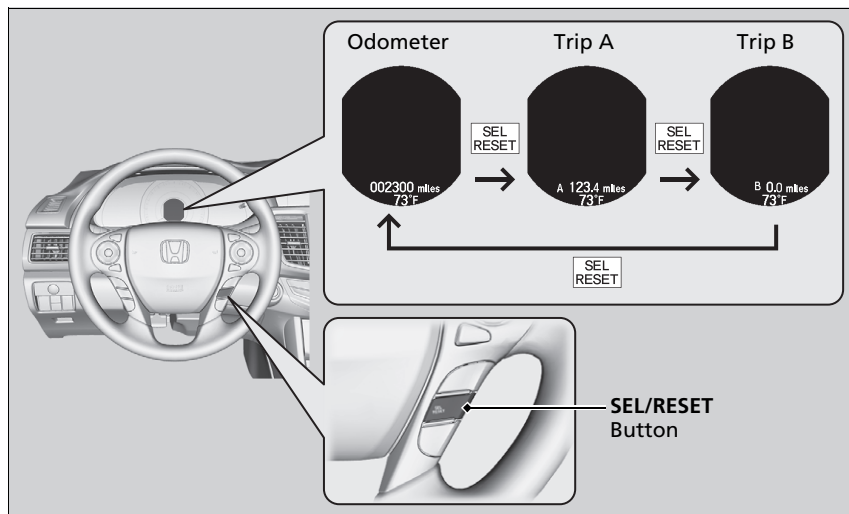
#### Main displays

Press the (information) button to change the display.



## ■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### » Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

### » Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

### » Range

The displayed range may change even when the vehicle is stationary.

### » Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

## ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

## ■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➤ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 489

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system\*.

### » Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

### » Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

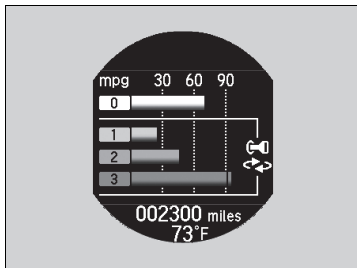
### » Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Average Fuel Economy Records



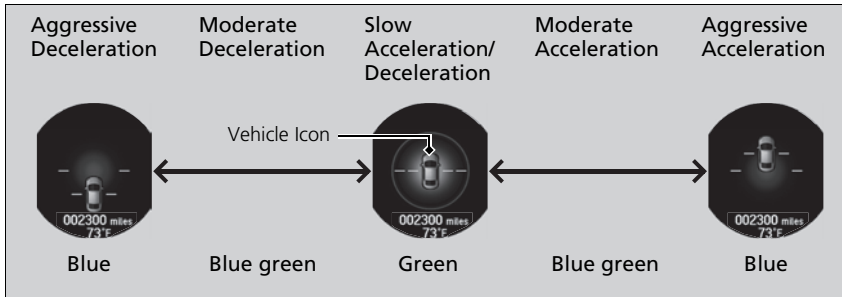
Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in mpg or l/100 km.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

## ■ Eco Drive Display/Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

### ■ Eco Drive Display

The vehicle icon on the display moves forward or backward while driving. The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the icon moves forward. The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the icon moves backward. Keep the icon near the center of the circle for better fuel economy while driving.



The fuel economy display color changes while driving. The area around the vehicle icon becomes blue with aggressive acceleration and deceleration, and blue green as fuel economy gets better, then green when driving in the most fuel efficient style. Keep the color green as long as possible.

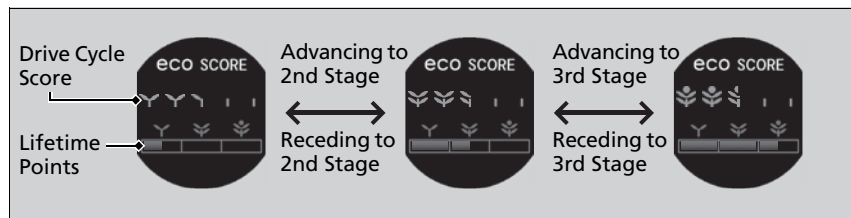
### ►► Eco Drive Display

The ambient meter color changes corresponding to the eco drive display.



## ■ Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.




## ■ Resetting the Drive Cycle Score

1. Make sure the shift lever is in **[P]**. Turn the power mode to ON.
2. If ECON mode is on, press the **ECON** button to turn it off.
3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
  - Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
  - The color of the ambient meter will change from blue to green.
  - When the **Fuel Efficiency Backlight** setting on the multi-information display is off, the color stays blue.
6. Press the **ECON** button twice.
  - The color of the ambient meter will turn to monochrome.
7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

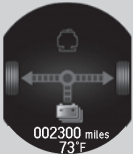
## Power Flow Monitor

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.




**Power Flow**  
**Engine**

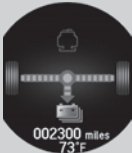
**Hybrid (HV)**  
Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.



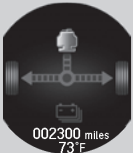
**Electric Vehicle (EV)**  
Power is supplied by the motor.




**Engine (Direct Drive)**  
The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.



**Regeneration**  
The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.



Power is being supplied by only the engine.



The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

Continued

## Power Flow Monitor


While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the multi-information display.

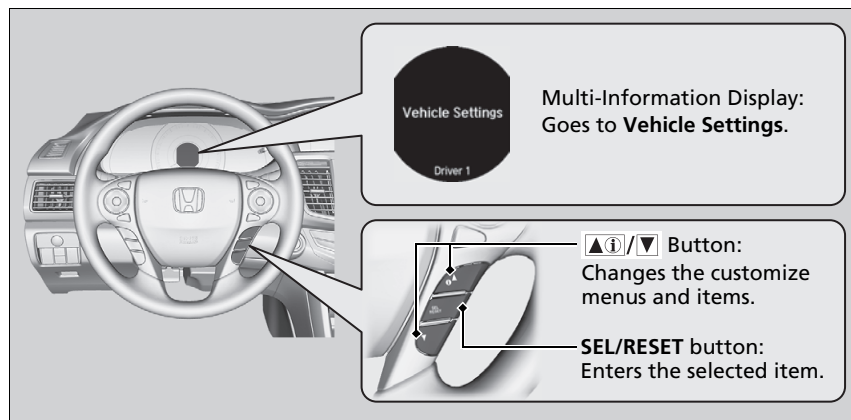


## ■ Customized Features


Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

Select the **Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the  button while the power mode is in ON, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



## ► Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

- **List of customizable options** P. 111
- **Example of customization settings** P. 114

### Models with driving position memory system

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**Driver 1** or **Driver 2**) on the screen. The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door. The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

### All models

When you customize settings: Shift to **P**

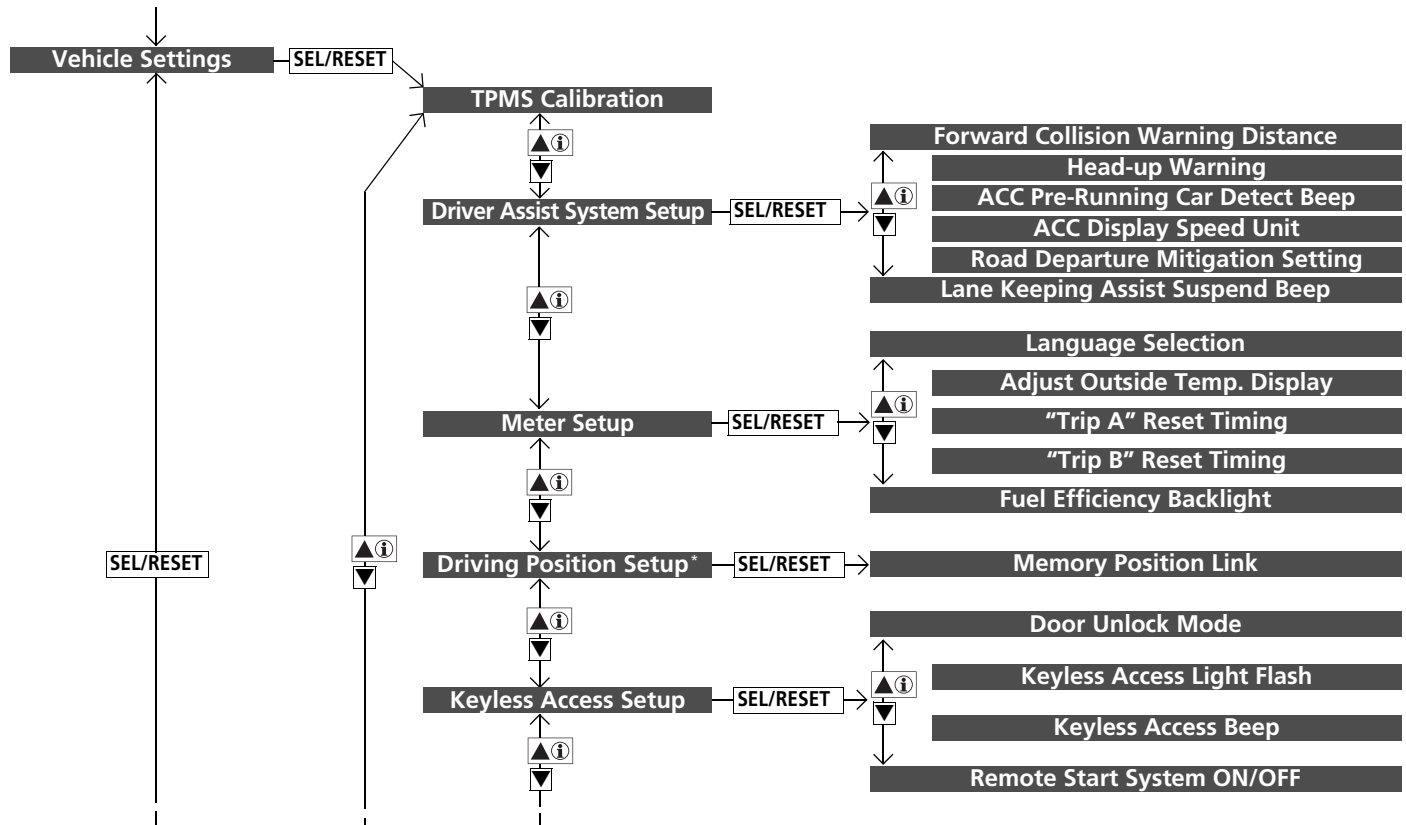
Customizing is also available from the audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*.

You cannot have **Vehicle Settings** displayed on the multi-information display while the audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\* shows the same menu.

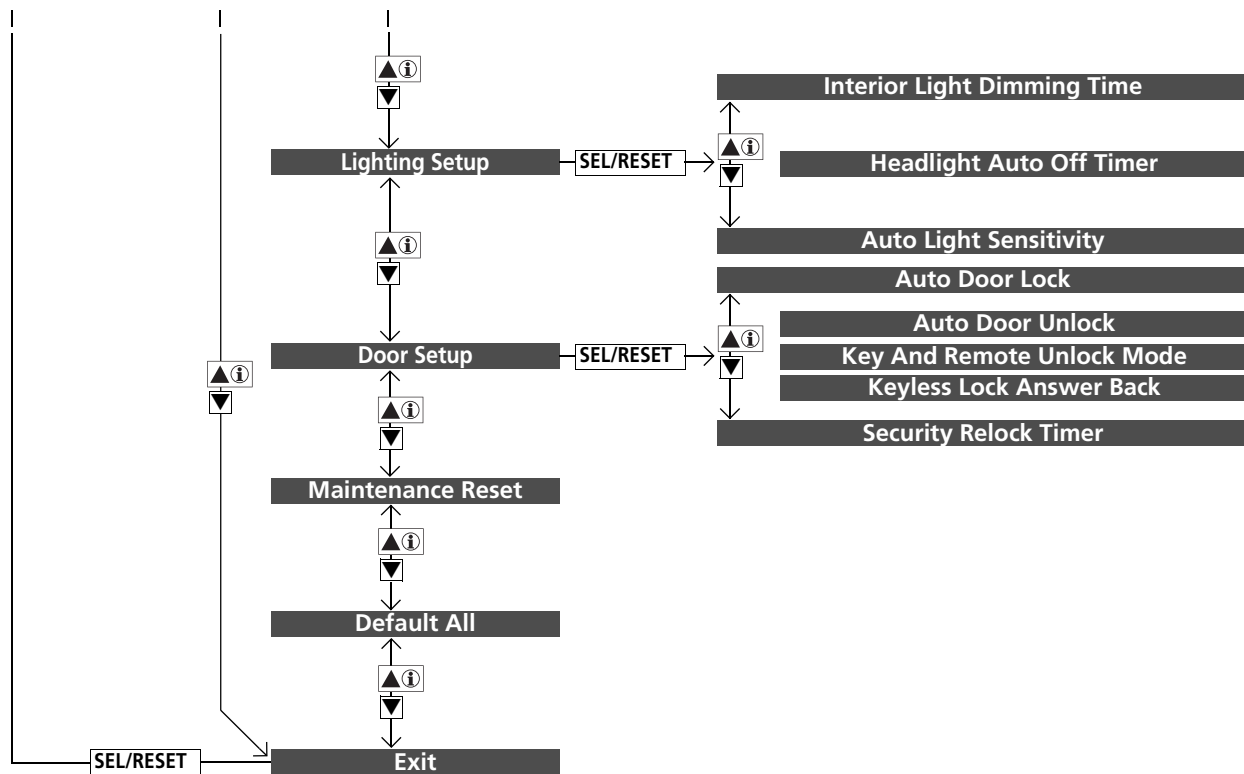
- **Customized Features** P. 295, 314

## ■ Customization flow

Press the /▼ button.



\* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>TPMS Calibration</b>	—	Calibrates the TPMS.	<b>Cancel/Calibrate</b>
<b>Driver Assist System Setup</b>	<b>Forward Collision Warning Distance</b>	Changes at which distance the CMBS™ alerts.	<b>Long/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Short</b>
	<b>Head-up Warning</b>	Turns the head-up warning lights on to flash or off.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>ACC Pre-Running Car Detect Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>ACC Display Speed Unit</b>	Changes the ACC display speed unit.	<b>mph*<sup>1</sup>/km/h (U.S.) mph/km/h*<sup>1</sup> (Canada)</b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Wide/Warning Only</b>
	<b>Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Language Selection</b>	Changes the displayed language.	<b>English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-5°F ~ ±0°F<sup>*1</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)</b>
	<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
<b>Driving Position Setup*</b>	<b>Memory Position Link</b>	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
<b>Keyless Access Setup</b>	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Remote Start System ON/OFF</b>	Turn the remote engine start feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1: Default Setting

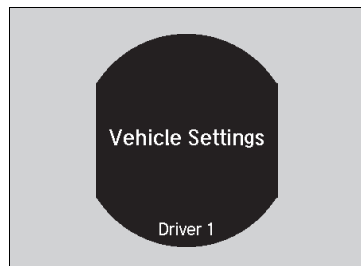
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec*<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Auto Light Sensitivity</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	<b>Max/High/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
<b>Door Setup</b>	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	<b>With Vehicle Speed*<sup>1</sup>/Shift From P/Off</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	<b>All Doors When Driver's Door Opens*<sup>1</sup>/All Doors When Shifted To Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off</b>
	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	<b>Driver Door*<sup>1</sup>/ All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Maintenance Reset</b>	—	Resets/Cancels the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	<b>Cancel/Reset</b>
<b>Default All</b>	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	<b>Cancel/Set</b>

\*1: Default Setting

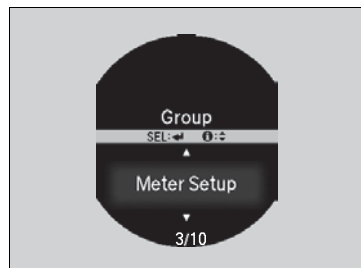


## ■ Example of customization settings

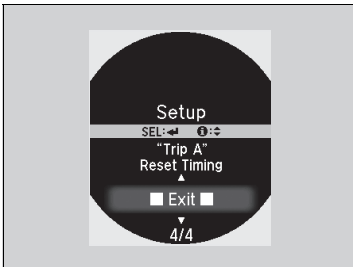
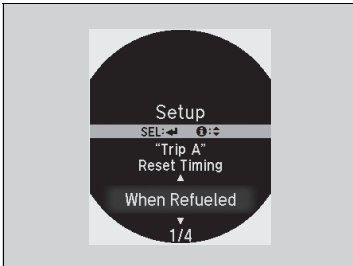
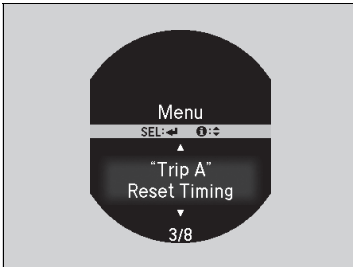
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**.



1. Press the /▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



2. Press the /▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - **Language Selection** appears first in the display.



4. Press the button until **"Trip A"** **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **IGN Off**, **Manually Reset**, or **Exit**.

5. Press the button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

6. Press the button until **Exit** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.



# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	118
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	
Key Types and Functions .....	120
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength .....	121
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	122
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	126
Childproof Door Locks .....	128
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	129
<b>Opening and Closing the Trunk</b> .....	130
<b>Security System</b> .....	
Immobilizer System .....	134
Security System Alarm .....	134

<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> ....	137
<b>Opening and Closing the Moonroof*</b> ..	140
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b> .....	
POWER Button .....	141
Turn Signals .....	144
Light Switches .....	144
Fog Lights .....	146
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* .....	147
Daytime Running Lights .....	150
Wipers and Washers .....	151
Brightness Control .....	153

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button .....	154
Driving Position Memory System * ....	155
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	157
<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b> .....	
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	158
Power Door Mirrors .....	159
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	160
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	167
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	
Using Automatic Climate Control ....	179
Synchronized Mode .....	181
Automatic Climate Control Sensors ...	182

\* Not available on all models

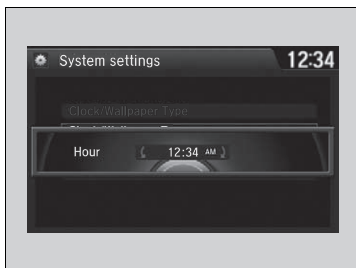
## Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode is in ON.

### Adjusting the Time

#### Models with one display

#### ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Rotate to change hour, then press .
4. Rotate to change minute, then press .

#### ▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

##### Models with one display

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 295

You can turn the clock display on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 295

#### ▶▶ Using the SETTINGS button

To set the time to the nearest hour: Press and hold the **CLOCK** button until the clock display blinks, then press the (Reset) button.

Depending on the displayed time, the clock sets forward or backward.

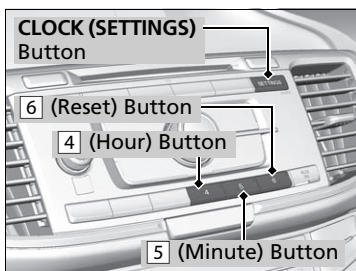
Example:

1:06 will reset to 1:00

1:53 will reset to 2:00

#### Models with one display

#### ■ Using the SETTINGS button






1. Press and hold the **CLOCK (SETTINGS)** button until the clock display blinks.
2. Press Preset (Hour) or (Minute) to adjust the time.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button again to set the time.

#### Models with two displays

### ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen



1. Select , then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting /.
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

#### »» Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen

#### Models with two displays

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

## Key Types and Functions

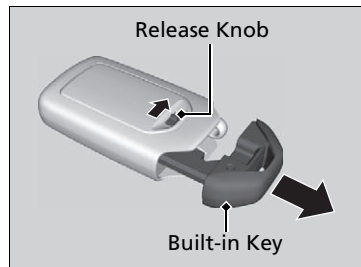
This vehicle comes with the following key:

### ■ Keys



Use the smart entry remote to turn on and off the power system, to lock and unlock the doors and to open the trunk. You can also use the smart entry system to lock and unlock the doors and to open the trunk.

### ■ Smart entry remote



The built-in key can be used to lock or unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

### Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### ■ Immobilizer System P. 134

The keys contain precision electronics.

Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

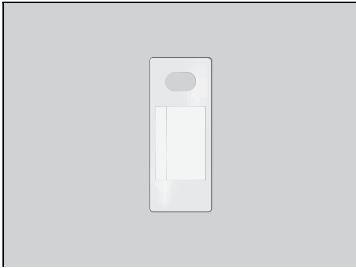
If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can remotely turn the power system on using the smart entry remote.

#### ■ Remote Engine Start P. 418

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or to activate the power system.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or activating the power system may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

### ⌘ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

### ⌘ Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

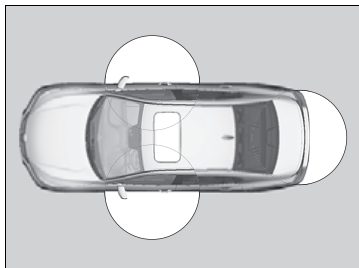
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.



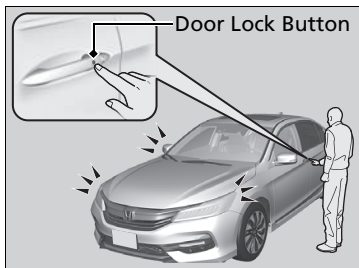
## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the trunk. You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the trunk within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the trunk release button.

### ■ Locking the doors and the trunk



Press the door lock button on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors lock; and the security system sets.

### ► Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, wait at least two seconds before unlocking it by gripping the handle.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

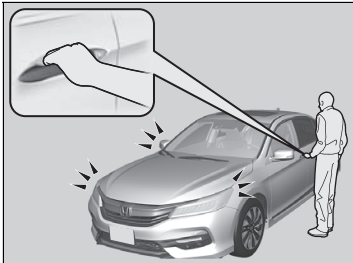
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

► **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 526

You can customize the door lock mode and keyless lock acknowledgement setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

## ■ Unlocking the doors and the trunk

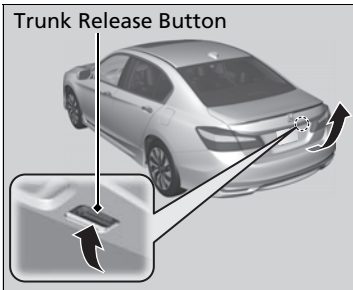


Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All the doors unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the trunk release button:

- The trunk unlocks and opens.

► **Using the Trunk Release Button** P. 131

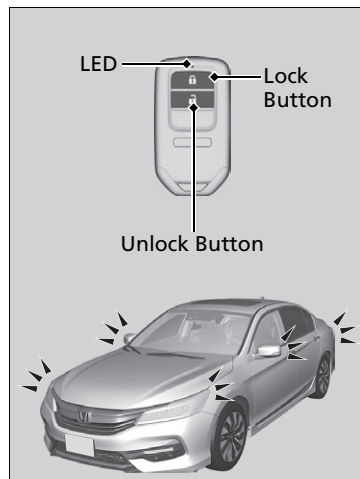
## ► Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

#### Once:

- Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

#### Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

### ■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

#### Once:

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

#### Twice:

- The remaining doors unlock.

## ► Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock. You can change the relock timer setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the unlock button. No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds. Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

► **Interior Lights** P. 167

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or smart entry system only when the power mode in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

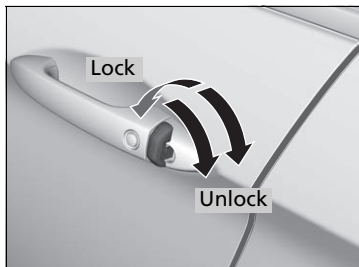
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

► **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 526

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

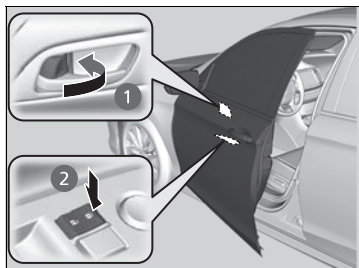
► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key



Fully insert the key and turn it.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, and close the door.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

## ⌘ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

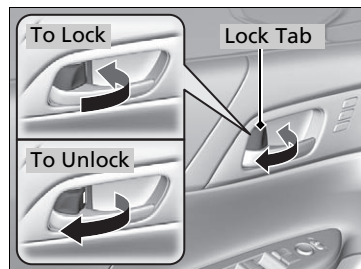
## ⌘ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Make sure you have the key in your hand when you lock the driver's door, or any of the other doors, otherwise you may end up locking the key inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab



#### ■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

#### ■ Unlocking a door

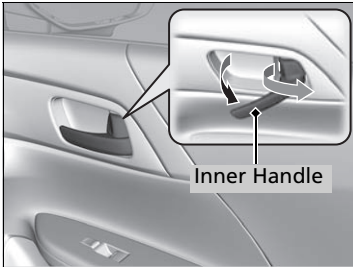
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ►► Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

## ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

- This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the multi-information display, audio/information touch screen\* or audio/information screen\*.

## ⌘ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

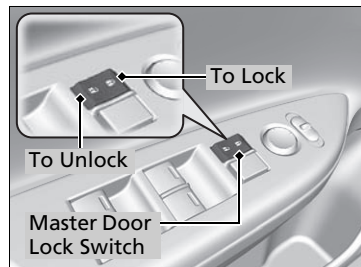
The inner front door handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 128

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

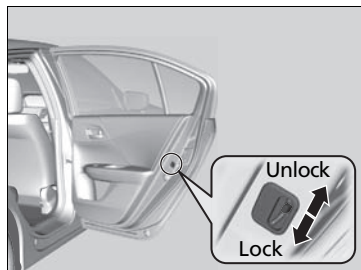


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

## ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

## ► Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

## ► Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks and unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

### ■ Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

### ■ Auto Door Unlocking

#### ■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

### ⌘ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display, audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

\* Not available on all models



## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Trunk

### ■ Opening the trunk

Open the trunk all the way.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the trunk lid may begin to close under its own weight.

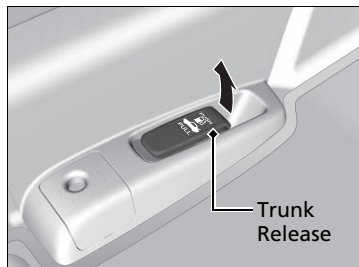
### ■ Closing the trunk

Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to:

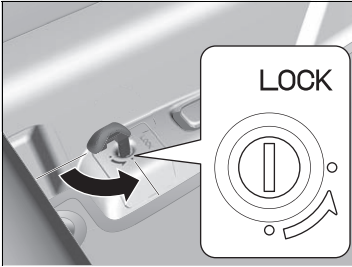
- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

☒ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 70

## Using the Trunk Opener



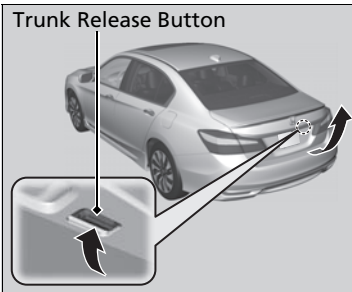
Pulling the trunk release to the lower left of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the trunk.



### ■ Locking the trunk opener

You can lock the trunk release with the built-in key.

## Using the Trunk Release Button



Push up the release button on the trunk lid after the doors are unlocked.

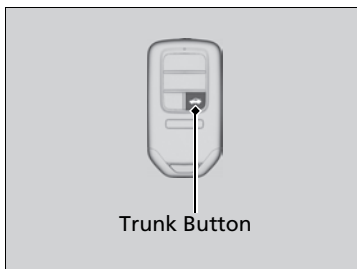
Even if the trunk is locked, you can open the trunk if you carry the smart entry remote.

- The beeper will sound.

### ▣ Using the Trunk Release Button

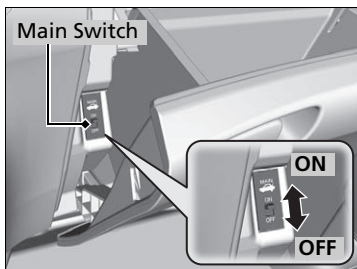
- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- A person who is not carrying the smart entry remote can unlock the trunk if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- Do not leave the smart entry remote inside the trunk and close the lid. The beeper sounds and the trunk cannot be closed.
- Do not carry the smart entry remote near the trunk lid when closing it.
- Do not place the smart entry remote around the rear seat when closing the trunk.

## Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the trunk release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the trunk.

## Trunk Main Switch



The trunk main switch disables the trunk release button on the remote transmitter and the trunk release button on the trunk lid to protect luggage in the trunk.

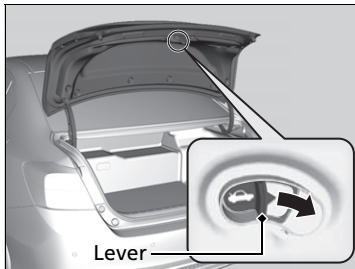
1. Turn off the trunk main switch in the glove box.
2. Lock the glove box.
3. Lock the trunk release.

► **Using the Trunk Opener** P. 130

### ► Trunk Main Switch

If you need to give the key to someone else, remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote by sliding the release knob, and give the remote as a valet key.

## Emergency Trunk Opener



The trunk release lever allows you to open the trunk from inside for your safety.

Slide the release lever in the direction of the arrow.

### Emergency Trunk Opener

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the motor. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when selecting the ACCESSORY mode with the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the smart entry remote.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the trunk, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the trunk or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm activates if a door is opened with the key and then the shift lever is moved out of **P** or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter, or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### » Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the ignition key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

### » Security System Alarm

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood and trunk are closed.
- All doors are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system is set.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, or smart entry system. The security system indicator goes off at the same time.

### ▣ Security System Alarm

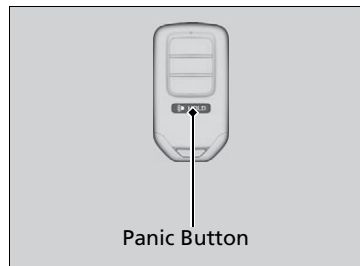
Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the trunk with the trunk release or the emergency trunk opener.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.
- Moving the shift lever out of **P**.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

## ■ Panic Mode



### ■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

### ■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or set the power mode to ON.

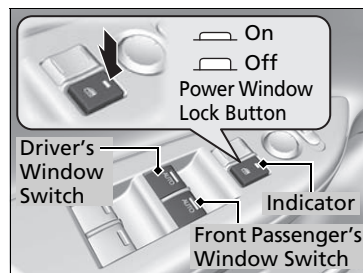
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on when children are in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

#### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### ⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Auto Reverse

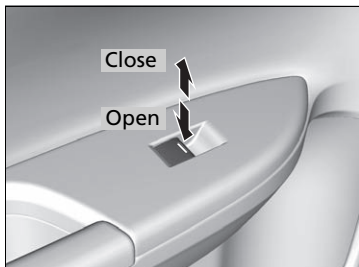
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.



## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function

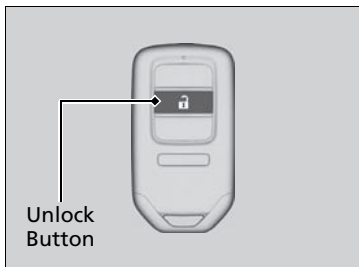


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

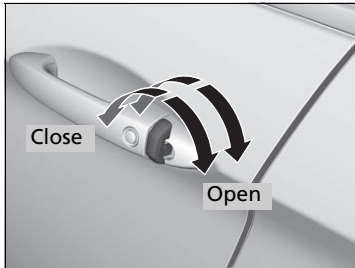
## ■ Opening Windows and Moonroof with the Remote



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and moonroof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key



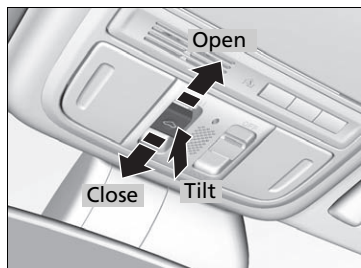
**To open:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can only operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Tilting the moonroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the center of the moonroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

## » Opening/Closing the Moonroof

### ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

### NOTICE

Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

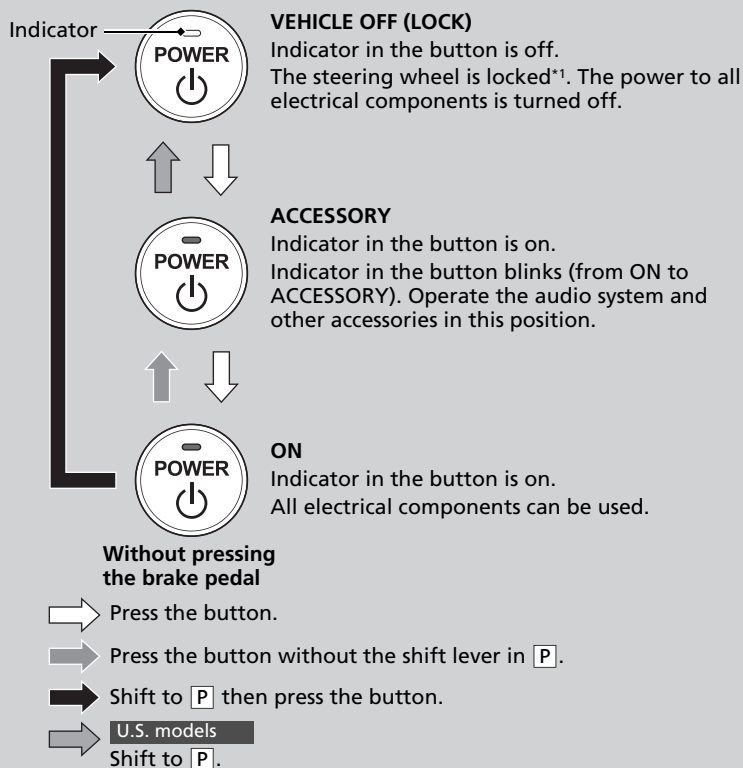
The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.

## POWER Button

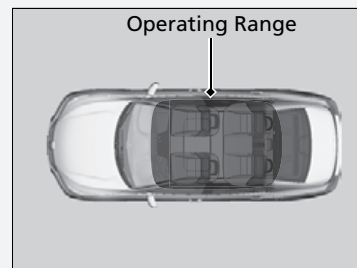
### Changing the Power Mode



\*1: Canadian models

### POWER Button

#### POWER Button Operating Range



You can start the power system when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

The power system may also start if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

Indicator in the button is off, if the engine is running.

If the smart entry remote battery is weak, beeper sounds and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display.

**If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 546

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the 12-volt battery drain.

When in this mode:

### Canadian models

The steering wheel does not lock.

### All models

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

Press the **POWER** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

## » Changing the Power Mode

### Canadian models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **POWER** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

## ■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place within the system's operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in **ON**

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

### ■ When the power mode is in **ACCESSORY**

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

## ▣ Smart Entry Remote Reminder

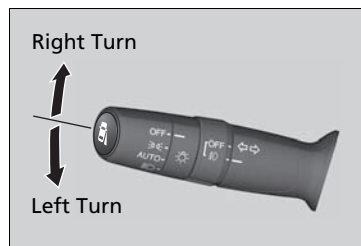
When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

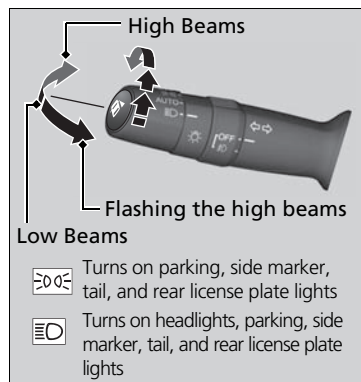
### ■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

## Light Switches

### ■ Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### ► Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

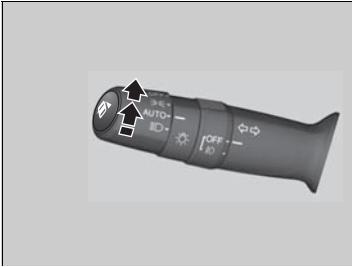
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

### ► Lights On Indicator P. 81

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

## Automatic Lighting Control



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

- You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

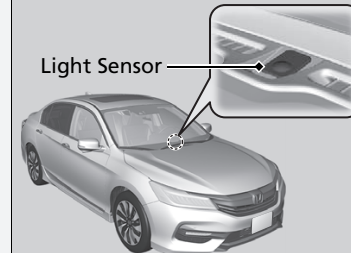
🔧 **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

### Automatic Lighting Control

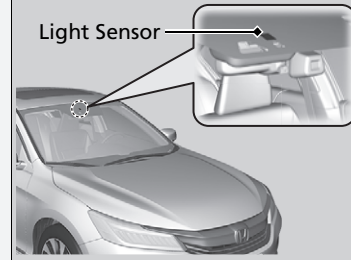
We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

#### Models without automatic intermittent wipers



#### Models with automatic intermittent wipers





■ **Headlight Integration with Wipers\***

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**. The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature**

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

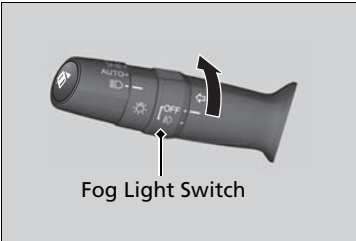
▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (three minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.


**Fog Lights**



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

▶▶ Automatic Lighting Control

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
MAX	 Bright
HIGH	
MID	
LOW	
MIN	
	Dark

▶▶ Headlight Integration with Wipers\*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

▶▶ Fog Lights

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on. They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

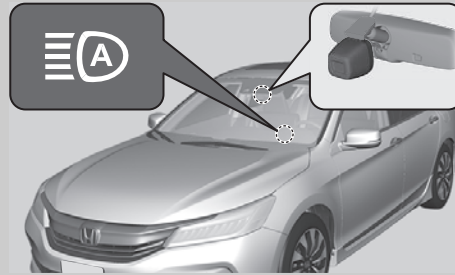
➤ **Fog Light Indicator** P. 81

## Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)\*

Uses the camera attached to the windshield, monitors the space ahead of your vehicle, and automatically changes the low beam headlights to high beam headlights when necessary.

### The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The system recognizes that you are driving at night and the low beam headlights come on.
- The vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).

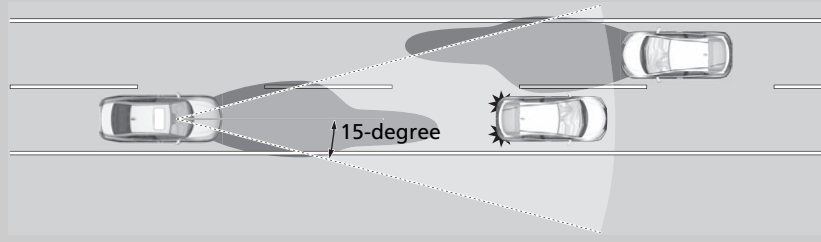


### The system changes between high and low beam headlights when:

The camera is not detecting any lights coming from preceding or oncoming vehicles: The headlights change to high beams.

The camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle: The headlights are returned to low beams.

The camera monitors the range within the 30-degree view angle. The distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



### Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)\*

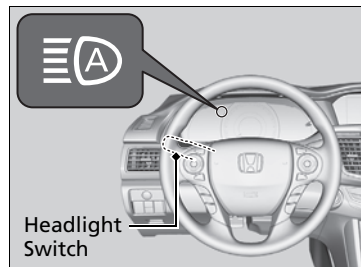
The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, however, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle ahead of you suddenly cuts you off or is not traveling in the appropriate direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Operate the System



Turn the headlight switch in **AUTO** and pull the headlight lever to low beam.

➤ **Light Switches** P. 144

The auto high-beam indicator (Green) comes on.

## ■ Temporary cancellation

The auto high-beam operation is temporarily canceled while:

- You are continuously driving at a speed below 15 mph (24 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The windshield wipers run at high speed for more than a few seconds.

The system operation resumes once the condition that caused it to cancel improves.

## ► To Operate the System

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.  
When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film in the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

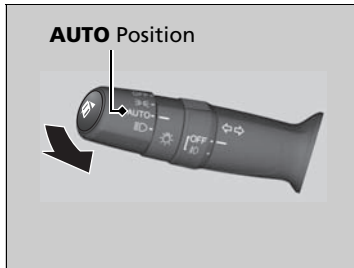
To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.

If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

If the **Can Not Operate:**  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windshield, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windshield, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ To Disable the System



Disable the system when the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

**To disable the system:** Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for 40 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink twice.

**To enable the system:** Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for 30 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink once.


## ▣ To Disable the System

The auto high-beam will remain in the selected disabled or enabled setting each time you turn the power system on.

## Daytime Running Lights

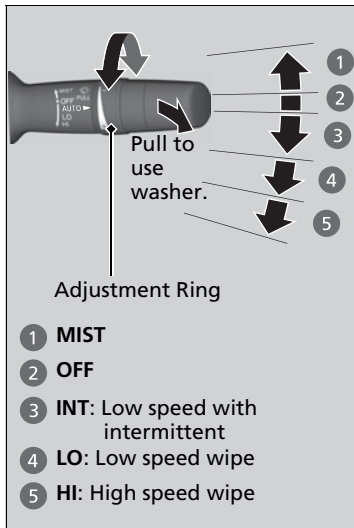
---

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is ON.
- The headlight switch is off, or in .
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

## Wipers and Washers



The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT\*, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ AUTO\*

► Automatic Intermittent Wipers\* P. 152

### ■ Adjusting wiper operation

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

## Wipers and Washers

### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

### Models without automatic intermittent wipers

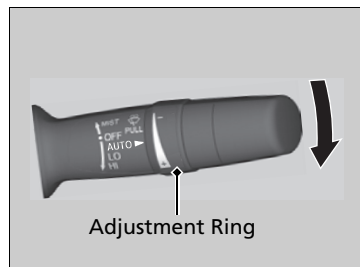
If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the LO setting become the same.

### All models

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor is equipped with a breaker that may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

## Automatic Intermittent Wipers \*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the adjustment ring.

### Sensor sensitivity

- **Low Sensitivity:**  
Wipers will operate when more rainfall is detected.
- + **High Sensitivity:**  
Wipers will operate when less rainfall is detected.

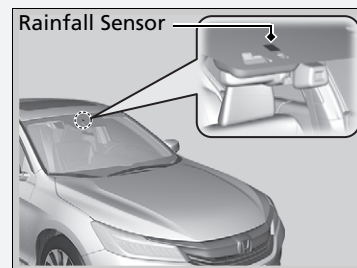
## Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

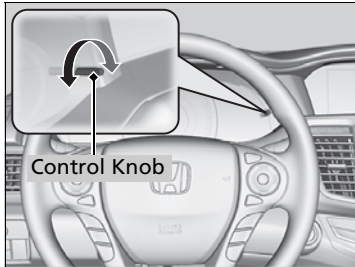
## Automatic Intermittent Wipers \*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



Do not put the wiper lever in **AUTO** when cleaning the windshield or driving through a car wash. If the wiper lever is in **AUTO**, and the power mode is in ON, the rainfall sensor may respond to your hand or car wash liquids, and the wipers may operate automatically.

## Brightness Control



When the parking lights are turned on and the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.




### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the multi-information display while you are adjusting it.

### ▣ Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

Pressing the  (Select/Reset) knob switches the display.

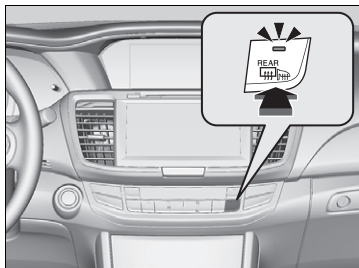
If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the parking lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.



## Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

### ►► Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

## Driving Position Memory System\*

You can store two driver's seat positions with the driving position memory system. When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

When you enter the vehicle, the multi-information display briefly shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



### Driving Position Memory System\*

Using the multi-information display, audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

► **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

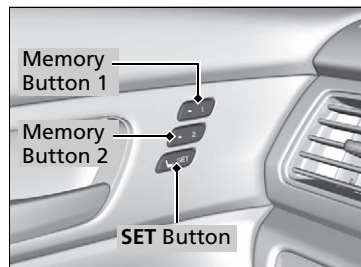
### System Operation

The system will not operate if:

- The vehicle speed is above 2 mph (3 km/h).
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- The memory 1 or 2 position is set fully to the rear.

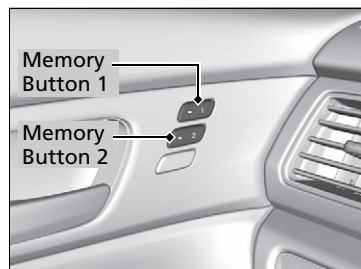
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
  - You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button **[1]** or **[2]** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
  - Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

## ■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to **[P]**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
  - You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beep, and the indicator light stays on.

## ▣ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

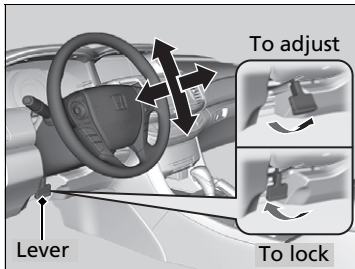
## ▣ Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button or memory button **[1]** or **[2]**.
- Adjust the seat position.
- Shift into a position other than **[P]**.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

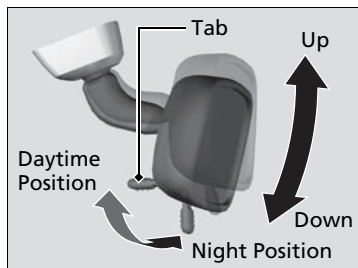
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

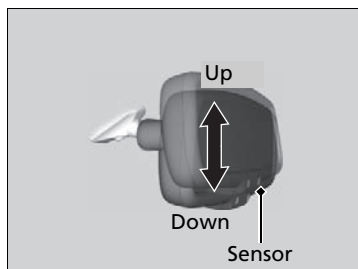
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

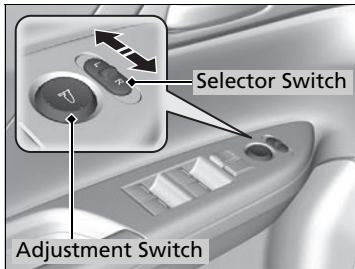
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Adjusting the Seat Positions** P. 160

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in **[R]**.

## Power Door Mirrors



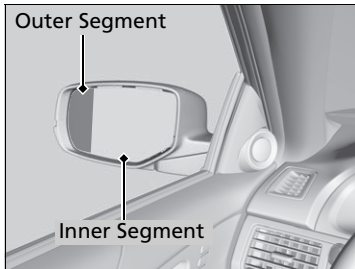
You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

## ■ Expanded View Driver's Mirror



The driver side door mirror has outer and inner segments.

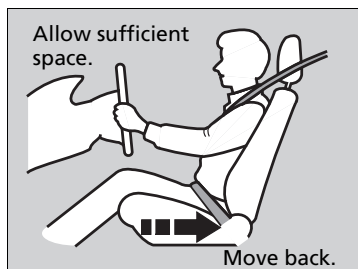
The outer segment is slightly curved to provide a wider angle view than a standard flat mirror. This wider view may help you check areas that are not visible using a standard door mirror.

### » Expanded View Driver's Mirror

Objects visible in the outer segment of the driver side door mirror appear smaller than objects in the rest of the mirror. But in fact, they are closer than they appear.

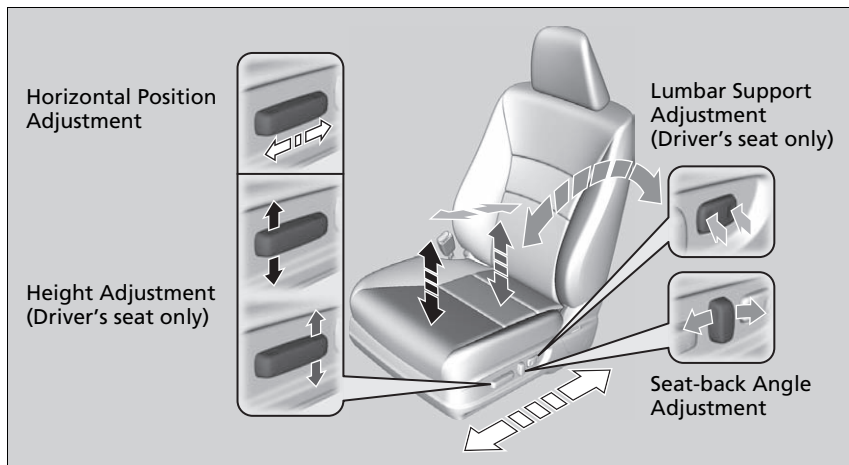
Do not rely on your mirrors. Always look to the side and behind your vehicle before changing lanes.

## Adjusting the Seat Positions



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### ■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)\*



### Adjusting the Seats

## ⚠ WARNING

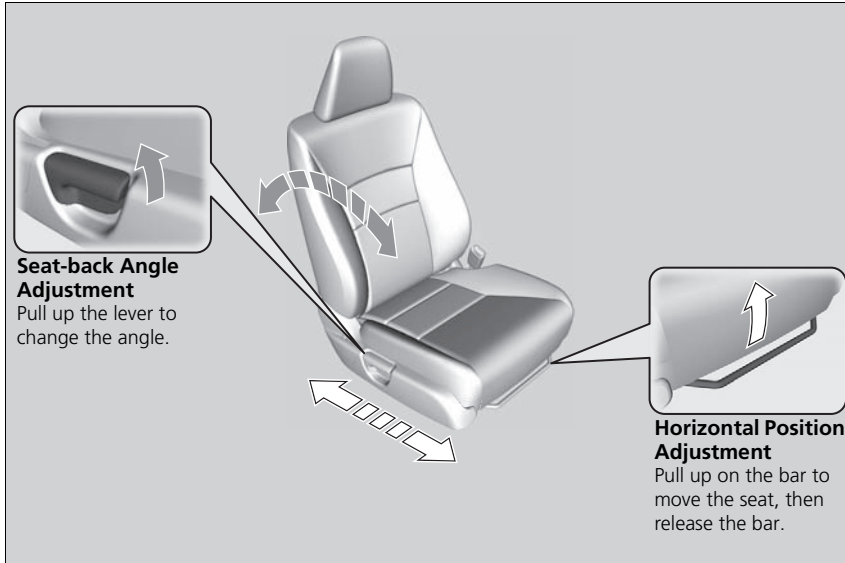
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

## ■ Adjusting the front passenger's manual seat\*



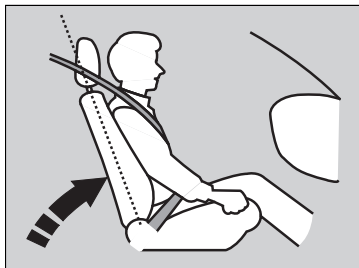
## ►► Adjusting the front passenger's manual seat\*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

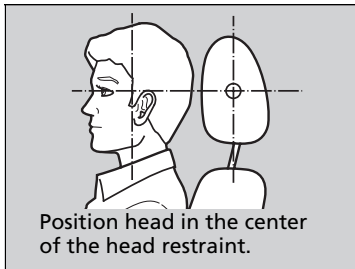
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

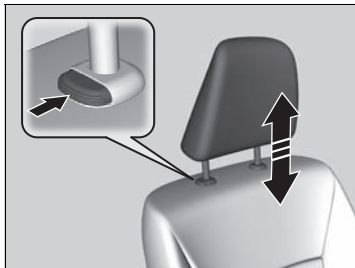
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.  
**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ⌘ Head Restraints

## ⚠ WARNING

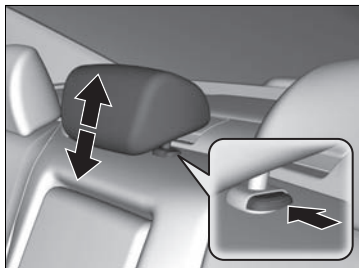
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## ■ Changing the Rear Center Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the center back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### **To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

### **To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### ► Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

## **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

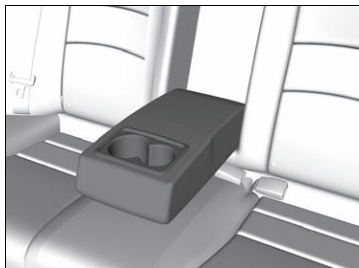
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Armrest

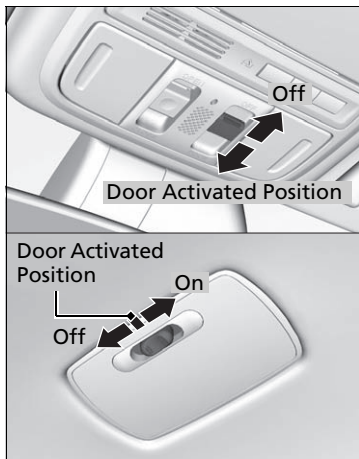
### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center backrest.

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

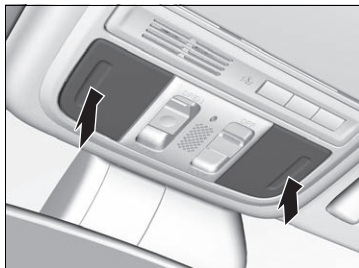
➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you set the power mode to ON.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

## ■ Map Lights



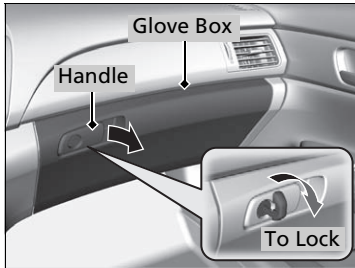
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

## ►► Map Lights

When the ceiling light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

## Interior Convenience Items

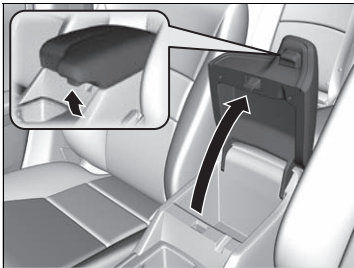
### Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

### Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

#### Glove Box

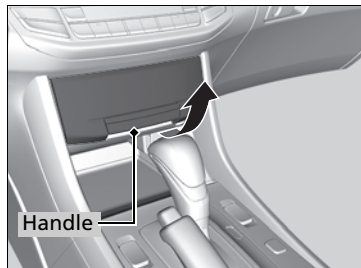
### **⚠ WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

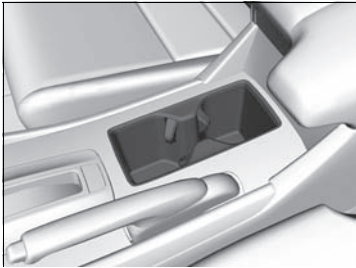


## ■ Center Pocket



Pull the handle to open the pocket.

## ■ Beverage Holders

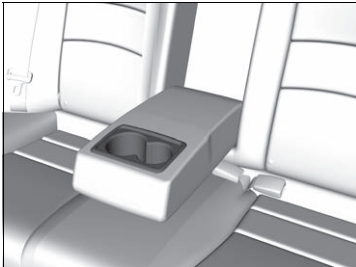


### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



### ■ Front door beverage holders



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

## » Beverage Holders

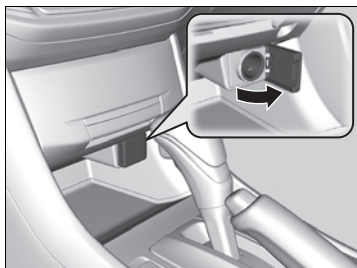
### NOTICE

Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

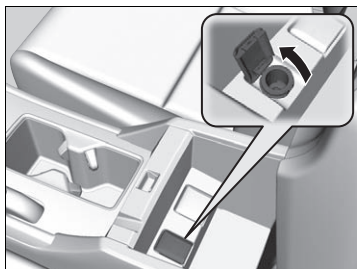
## ■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



### ■ Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



### ■ Accessory power socket (console compartment)

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

## » Accessory Power Sockets

### NOTICE


Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element: The power socket can overheat.

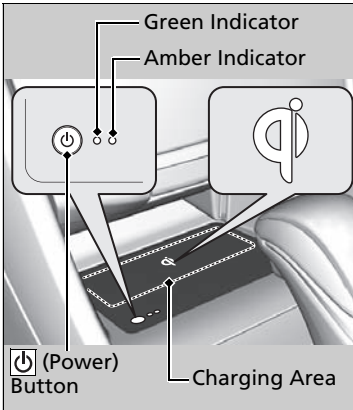
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.


To prevent battery drain, use the power socket only when the power system is on.

When both sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 180 watts (15 amps).

## Wireless Charger\*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
  - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
  - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
  - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
  - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

## Wireless Charger\*

### ⚠ CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzene or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.


This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.


Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the center of the charging area where  is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

## Wireless Charger\*

### NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic wave or noises such as TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors or the trunk are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the smart entry system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

## ■ Coat Hook



There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

## ■ Cargo Hook



The cargo hook in the trunk can be used to install a net for securing items.

## ▣ Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

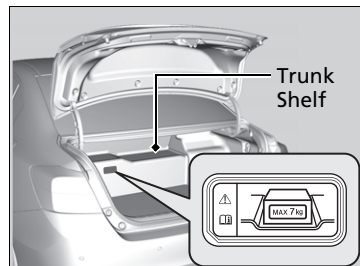
## ▣ Cargo Hook

Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on this hook weigh less than 6.6 lbs (3 kg).

Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.

► **Maximum Load Limit** P. 413

## ■ Cargo Area



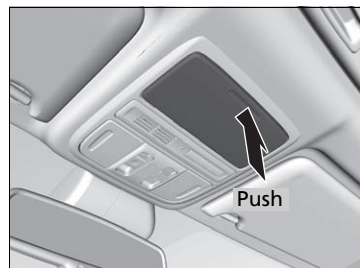
In addition to the larger cargo area, the trunk incorporates a small shelf above the High Voltage (HV) battery module that can carry up to 15.4 lbs (7kg). Do not exceed this capacity.

Be aware that this vehicle was not designed to carry a spare tire. This is because the spare could be forced into the HV battery and cause leakage of flammable electrolyte in the event your vehicle were to be severely impacted from the rear.

In the event a flat tire, a tire repair kit is provided beneath the trunk floor.

► **Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire** P. 536

## ■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

## ► Cargo Area

### NOTICE

Heavy objects may damage the trunk shelf. Make sure any items put on the shelf weigh less than 15.4 lbs (7kg).

## ⚠ WARNING

Carrying a spare tire in the trunk can result in damage to the High Voltage battery and leakage of flammable electrolyte if your vehicle were to get severely impacted from the rear.

Do not carry a spare tire in the trunk.

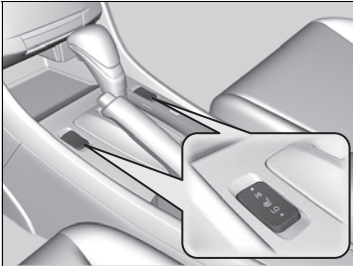
## ► Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

## Front Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in **ON** to use the seat heaters.



While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off.

## Front Seat Heaters\*

### **⚠ WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Rear Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

There is no heater in the rear center seating position.

While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on.

## ► Rear Seat Heaters\*

### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

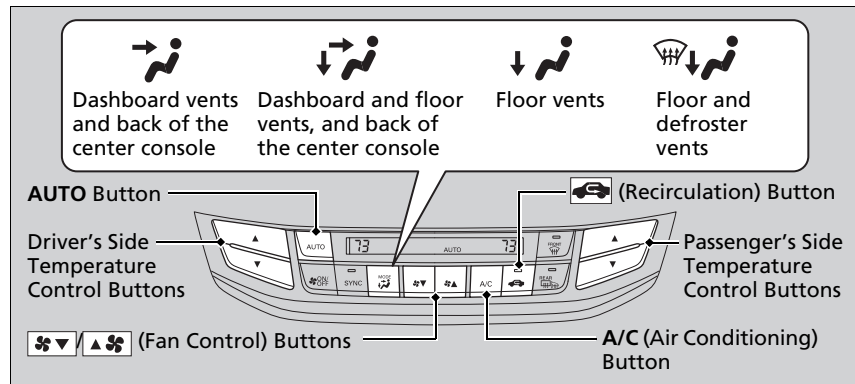
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

## Using Automatic Climate Control


The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the power system is in ON.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control buttons.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (on/off) button to cancel.

### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

### ⌘ Using Automatic Climate Control


If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

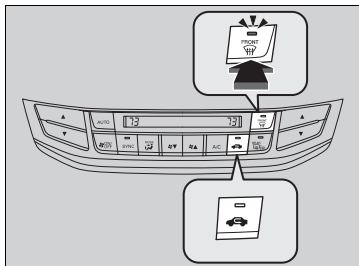
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.


When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the  button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

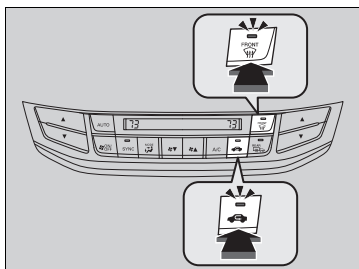
## ■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

## ►► Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

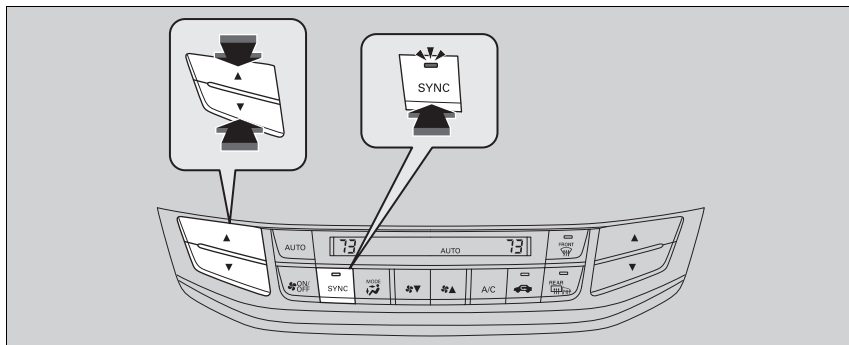
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

## ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Synchronized Mode



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side and the passenger side in synchronized mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.  
► The system will switch to the synchronized mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using driver's side temperature control buttons.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

### ► Synchronized Mode

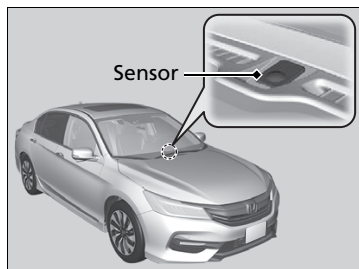
When you press the **FRONT VENT** button, the system changes to synchronized mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver side temperature and the passenger side temperature can be set separately.

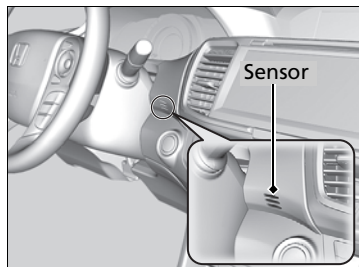
### Models with navigation system

The system adjusts each temperature based on the information of the sunlight sensor and the sun position updated by the navigation system.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

<b>Audio System</b>	
About Your Audio System .....	184
USB Port(s) .....	185
Auxiliary Input Jack* .....	186
Audio System Theft Protection* .....	187
Audio Remote Controls .....	188
<b>Models with one display</b>	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	190
Audio/Information Screen .....	191
Display Setup .....	196
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	197
Playing a CD .....	199
Playing an iPod .....	202
Playing Internet Radio .....	205
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	208
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	211

<b>Models with two displays</b>	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	213
Audio/Information Screen .....	214
Audio/Information Touch Screen .....	216
Adjusting the Sound .....	230
Display Setup .....	231
Voice Control Operation .....	233
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	237
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* .....	241
Playing a CD .....	249
Playing an iPod .....	252
Song By Voice™ (SBV) .....	255
Playing Pandora®* .....	259
Playing Aha™ .....	261
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	262
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	265

HondaLink® .....	267
Wi-Fi Connection .....	272
Apple CarPlay® .....	274
Android Auto™ .....	278
Siri® Eyes Free .....	282
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	283
<b>General Information on the Audio System</b> .....	288
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	295, 314
<b>HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*</b> .....	338
<b><i>Bluetooth</i>® HandsFreeLink®</b> .....	340, 371
<b>Compass*</b> .....	406

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

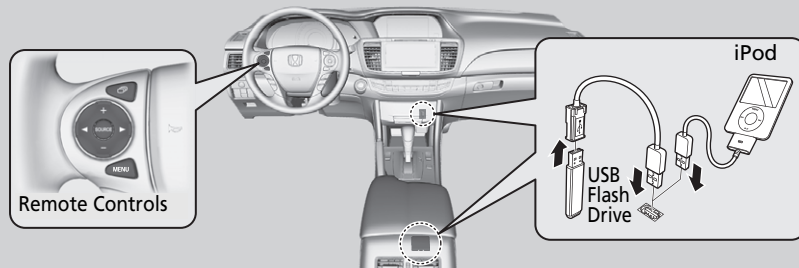
The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service\*. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and Bluetooth® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.

Models with one display



Models with two displays



### About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio, contact a dealer.

#### General Information on the Audio System P. 288

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM® is a trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc.

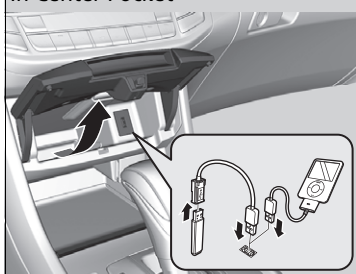
Video CDs, DVDs, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

## USB Port(s\*)

In Center Pocket



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### Models with one display

- ▶ The USB port (1.0 A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive and connecting a cellular phone and charging device.

### Models with two displays

- ▶ The USB port (1.5 A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™.

In Console Compartment\*



### ■ In the console compartment\*

The USB port (1.0 A) is for playing audio files on the USB flash drive and connecting a cellular phone and charging device.

### ⌘ USB Port(s\*)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

### USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.0 A/1.5 A of power. It does not output 1.0 A/1.5 A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

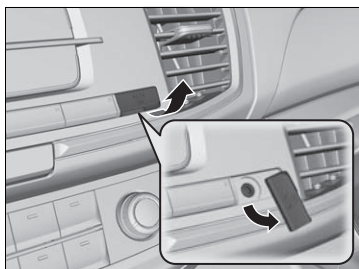
Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

\* Not available on all models



## Auxiliary Input Jack\*

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
  - The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

### » Auxiliary Input Jack\*

You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

Replacement of the audio system with other than a genuine Honda system may make the auxiliary jack inoperable.

## Audio System Theft Protection \*

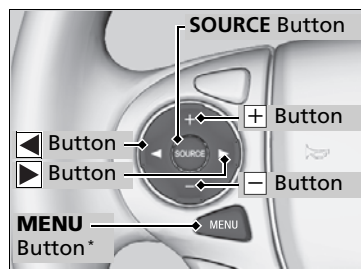
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

## Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



### SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

#### Models with one display

FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®\*→AUX

#### Models with two displays

FM→AM→SiriusXM®\*→CD→USB→iPod→  
Pandora®\*→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Audio Apps

### + - (Volume) Buttons

**Press** +: To increase the volume.

**Press** -: To decrease the volume.

### ◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio

**Press** ▶: To select the next preset radio station.

**Press** ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.

**Press and hold** ▶: To select the next strong station.

**Press and hold** ◀: To select the previous strong station.

- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio

**Press** ▶: To skip to the next song.

**Press** ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

- When listening to a CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio

**Press and hold** ▶: To skip to the next folder.

**Press and hold** ◀: To go back to the previous folder.

- When listening to Pandora®\*

**Press** ▶: To skip to the next song.

**Press and hold** ▶: To select the next station.

**Press and hold** ◀: To select the previous station.

### Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

#### Models with two displays

### Steering Wheel MENU Button

To choose options for the current audio device, press **MENU**, **Audio Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

Options available to you for each audio device:

- Radio: You can select **Scan**, **Auto Select**, **Save Preset**, **Seek Up**, or **Seek Down**.
- HD Radio™\*: You can select **Scan**, **Auto Select**, **Save Preset**, **Seek Up**, or **Seek Down**.
- SiriusXM®\*: You can select **Scan**, **Save Preset**, **Channel Up**, **Channel Down**, **Category Up**, or **Category Down**.
- CD or USB flash drive: You can select **Scan Folders**, **Scan Tracks**, **Repeat Folder**, **Repeat Track**, **Random in Folder**, or **Random All Tracks**.
- iPod: You can select **Play/Pause**, **Repeat Song**, **Shuffle Albums**, or **Shuffle All Songs**.
- Bluetooth® Audio: You can select **Pause** or **Play**.
- Pandora®\*: You can select **Like**, **Dislike**, **Bookmark**, or **Play/Pause**.

To choose options for the navigation system while it is in operation, press **MENU**, select **Navigation Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

📖 Refer to the Navigation System Manual

To choose options for HFL, press **MENU**, select **Phone Menu**, and then **SOURCE**. You can select **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial**.

To choose options for the display setting, press **MENU**, select **Display Setting**, and then **SOURCE**.

You can select **Brightness**, **Contrast**, or **Black Level**.

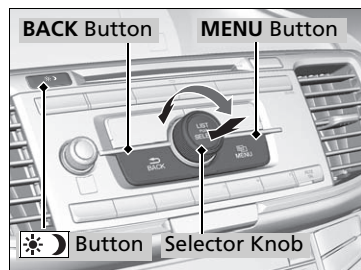
\* Not available on all models

#### Audio Remote Controls

The **MENU** button is available only when the audio mode is FM, AM, SiriusXM®\*, CD, USB, iPod, Pandora®\*, or Bluetooth® Audio.

## Models with one display

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in **ACCESSORY** or **ON**.



Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU button:** Press to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

**BACK button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

**button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press once and make an adjustment.

- Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.



## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Audio Menu Items

- **Station List** P. 198
- **Radio text** P. 198
- **Music Search** P. 200, 203, 209
- **Scan** P. 198, 201, 210
- **Random/Repeat** P. 201, 204, 210

This product includes software codes licensed under the conditions stated by the copyright holder.

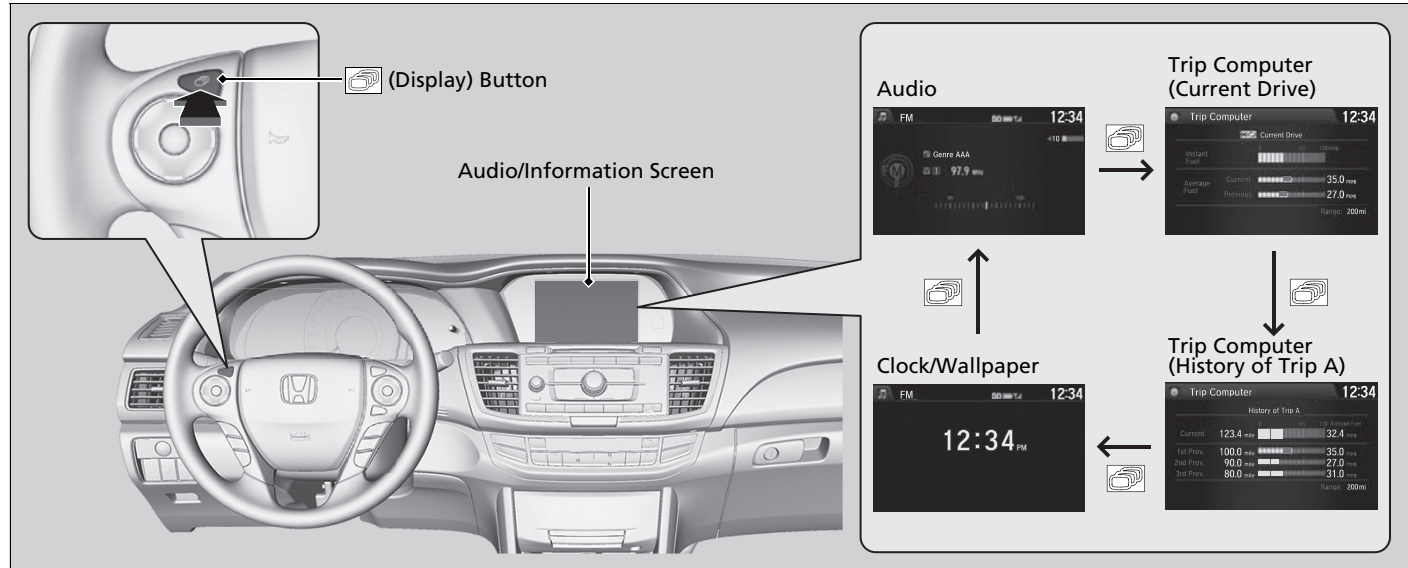
For license conditions and the copy of the corresponding source code, visit: <http://www.hondaopensource1.com/002>

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



### ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

### ■ Trip computer (Current Drive)

Shows the range, and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

### ■ Trip computer (History of Trip A)

Shows the range, average fuel economy and distance traveled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances traveled during the last three driving cycles.

Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.









1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
▶ **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
3. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
4. Rotate to select **Add New Wallpaper**, then press .
- ▶ The preview of the imported data is displayed.
5. Rotate to select a desired picture.  
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
6. Press to save the data.  
▶ The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

### Wallpaper Setup









- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.





## ■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate  to select **System Settings**, then press .
  - ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate  to select **Set**, then press .


## ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate  to select **System Settings**, then press .
  - ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press .
  - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Rotate  to select **OK**, then press  to delete completely.

## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

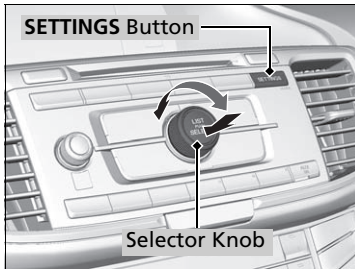
From the pop-up menu, rotate  to select **Preview** and press  to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, press  to select **OK**, or press the **BACK** button.

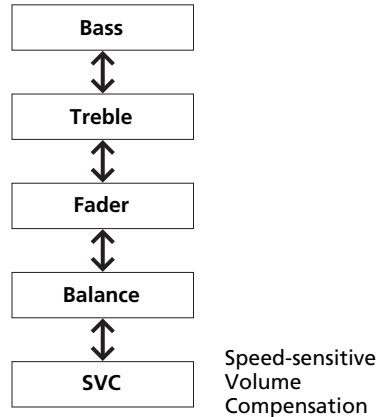
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

## Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Audio Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



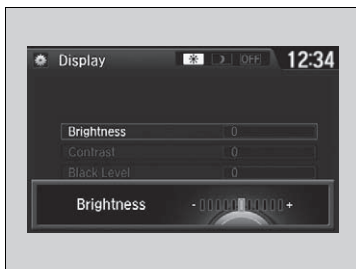
### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

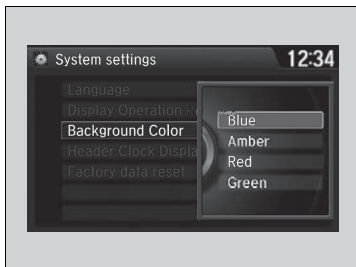
### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

► Repeat the procedure to select **Display**.

### ■ Changing the Screen's Color Theme



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Background Color**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

### ▣ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio

Audio/Information Screen



FM/AM Button

Press to select a band.

VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob

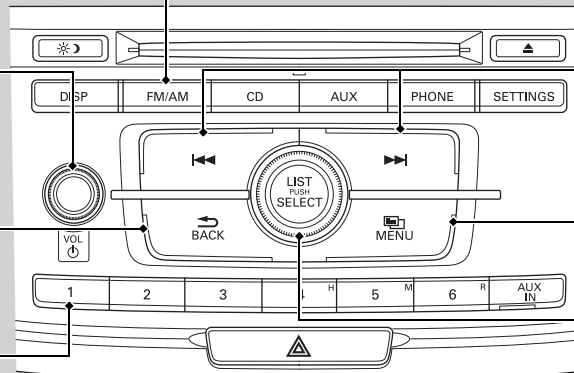
Press to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK Button

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Preset Buttons (1-6)

To store a station:  
Tune to the selected station.  
Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.  
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.



Seek/Skip Buttons

Press ◀◀ and ▶▶ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

MENU Button

Press to display the menu items.




Selector Knob

Turn to tune the radio frequency.  
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Refresh**, then press .

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Radio Text**, then press .

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press  to select **Stop**, or press the **BACK** button.

## ►► Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

### Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

► **Audio Remote Controls** P. 188

You can also switch the mode by pressing the **MENU** button and selecting **Change Source** on the MENU screen.

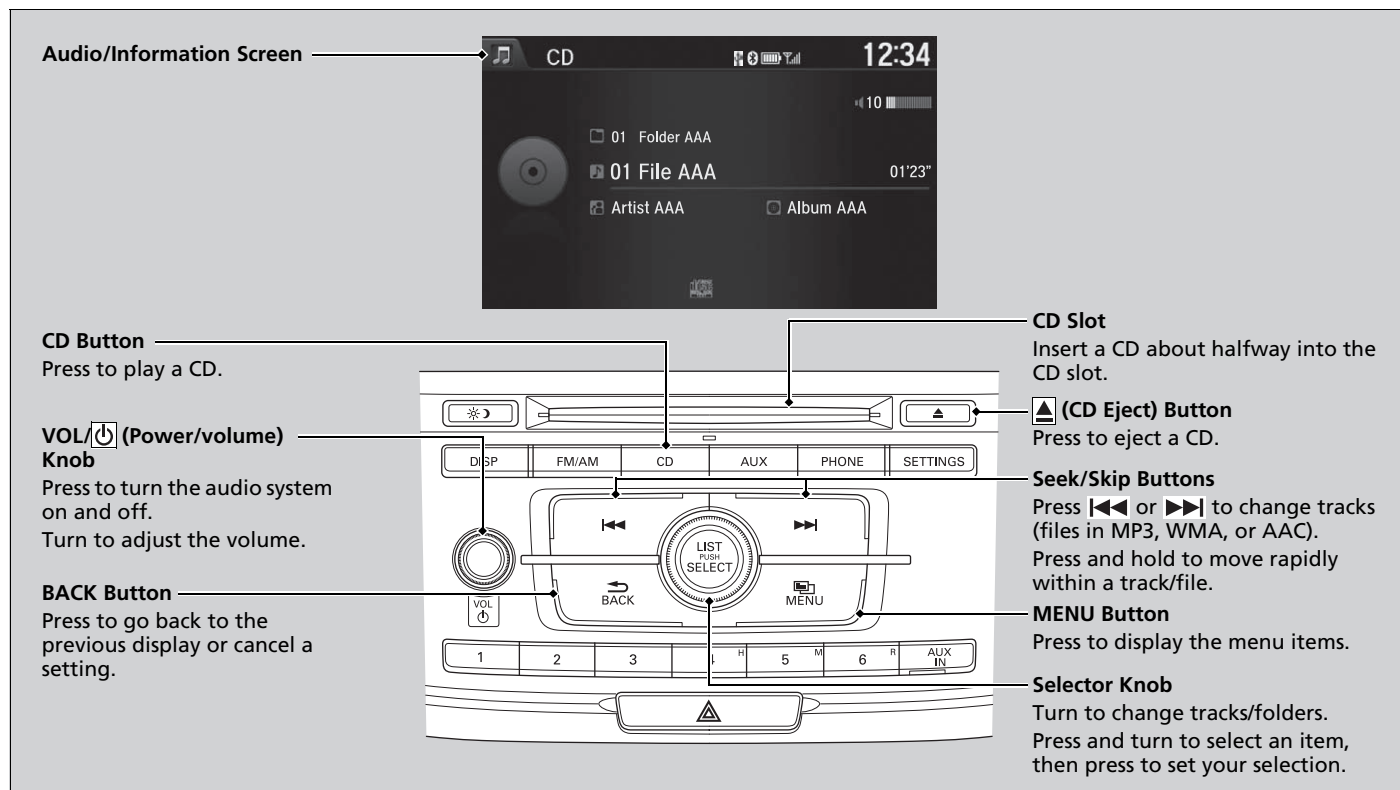
You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

## ►► Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

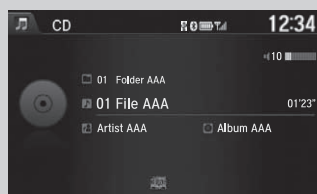
## Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD** button.



\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



### Folder Selection



### File Selection



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

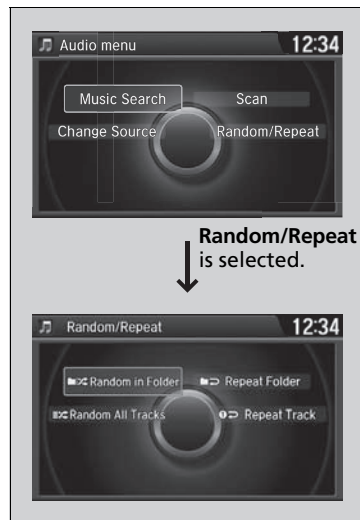
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

## To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.



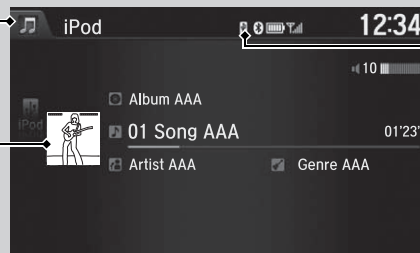
## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB Port, then press the **AUX** button.

➡ **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Album Art**



**USB Indicator**

Appears when an iPod is connected.

**AUX Button**

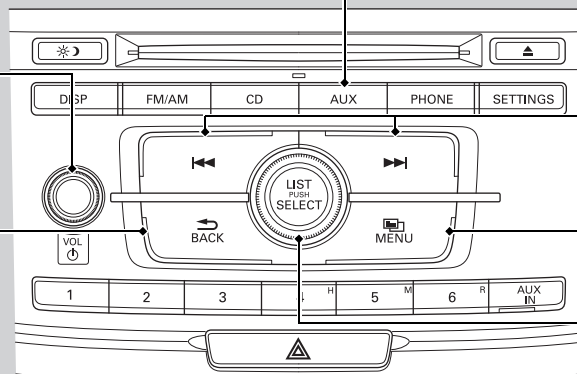
Press to select iPod (if connected).

**VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob**

Press to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

**BACK Button**

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



**Seek/Skip Buttons**

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to change songs.  
Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.







**MENU Button**

Press to display the menu items.

**Selector Knob**

Turn to change songs.  
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List


1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select a menu.
4. Press  to display the items on that menu.
5. Rotate  to select an item, then press .



## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 284

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Shuffle/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

## ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current file.

**Shuffle Album:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

U.S. models

Compatible phones only

## Playing Internet Radio

Connect a compatible phone through *Bluetooth*®.

iPhone

You can also connect the phone using your dock connector to the USB port. Press the **AUX** button to select Pandora mode.

### ▶▶ Playing Internet Radio

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc. Used with permission. Pandora® is only available in certain countries. Please visit <http://www.pandora.com/legal> for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.

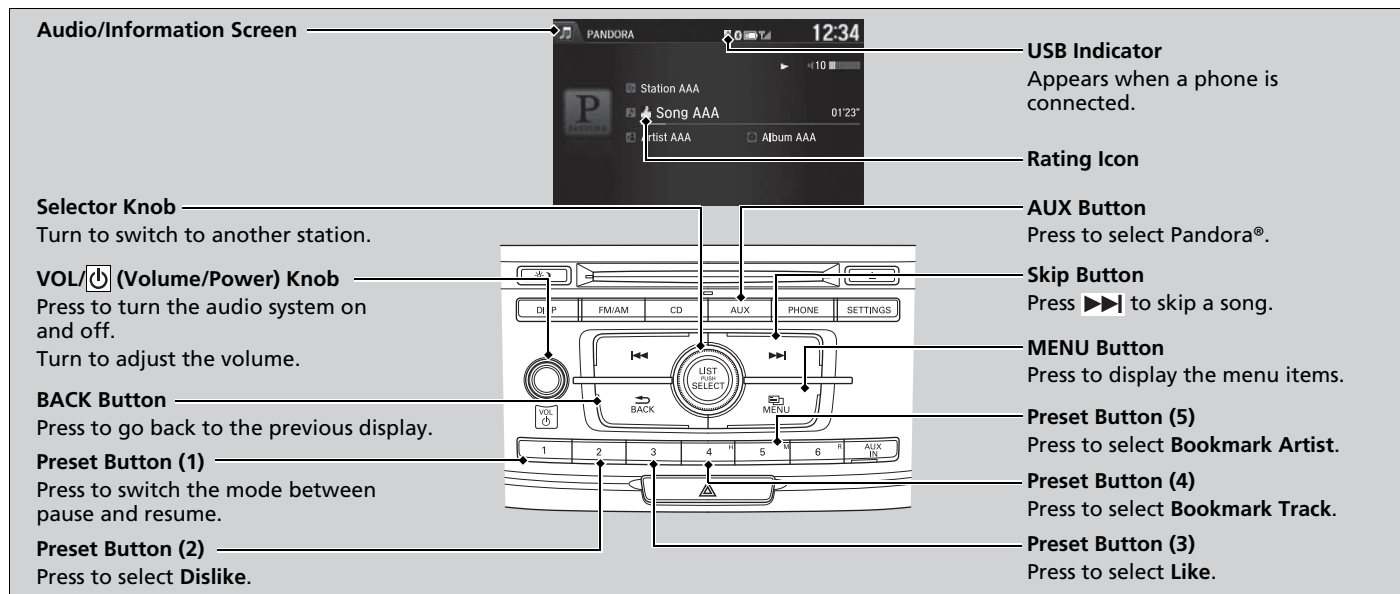
To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) for more information.

Pandora® is free personalized radio that offers effortless and endless music and comedy. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, genres, composers, or comedians and it will do the rest.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

### Changing Stations

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station.





## ■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Like** (Thumbs-up)
- **Dislike** (Thumbs-down)
- **Station List**
- **Change Source**
- **Bookmark Track**
- **Bookmark Artist**
- **Play/Pause**

### ■ Operating a menu item



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select an item, then press .

## ▶▶ Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **Pandora®** P. 285

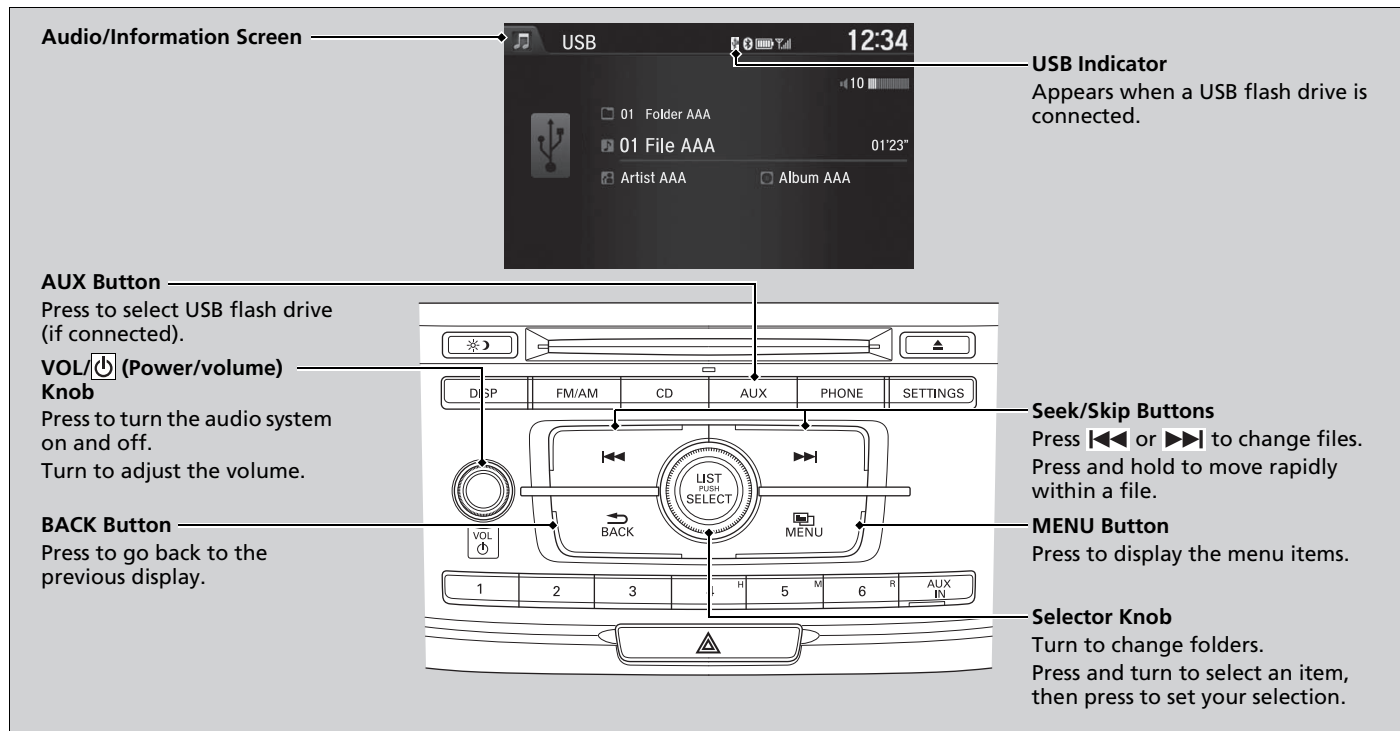
Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **AUX** button.

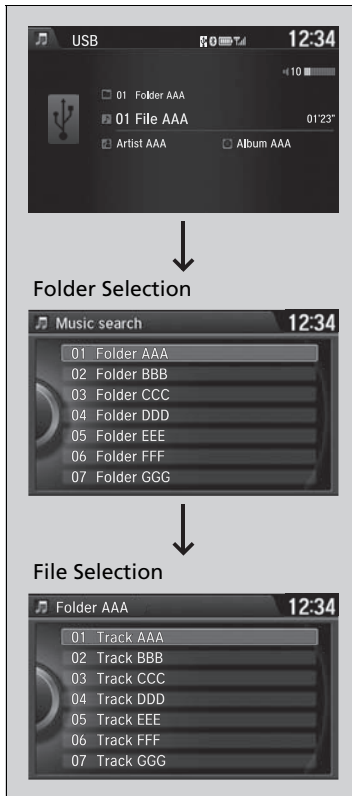
🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 185



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\* Not available on all models

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 288

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

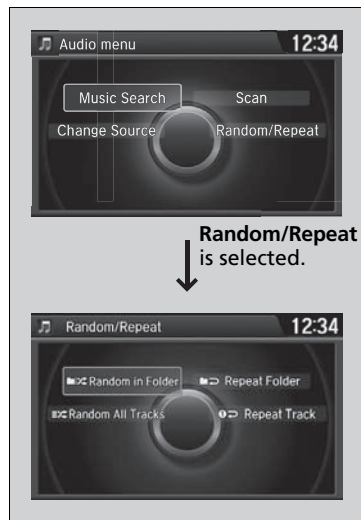
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 284



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

## ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

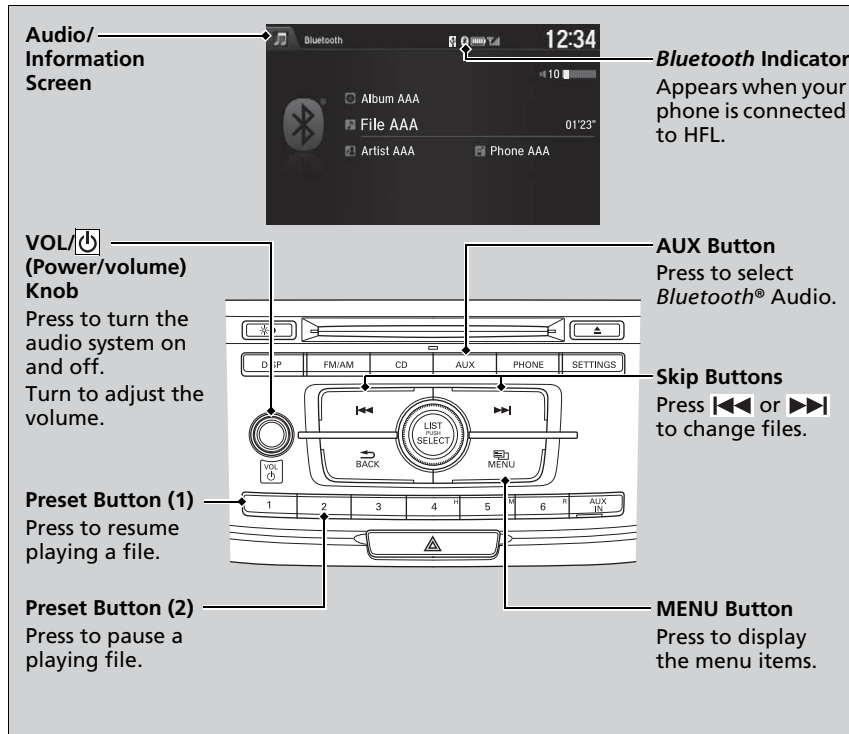
**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

## Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 347



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system.

For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.



## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the **AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Play** or **Pause**, then press .

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

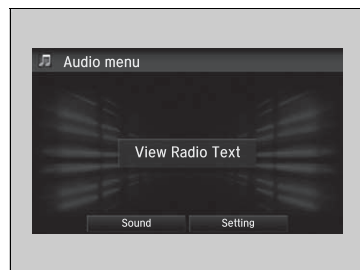
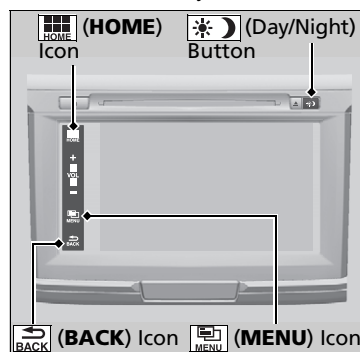
The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## Models with two displays

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



: Select to go to the home screen.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 216

: Select to display any mode.

The available modes include **Sound**, **View Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes.

: Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

(Day/Night) Button: Press to change the audio/information touch screen brightness. Press once and select or to make an adjustment.

► Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

### Audio Menu Items

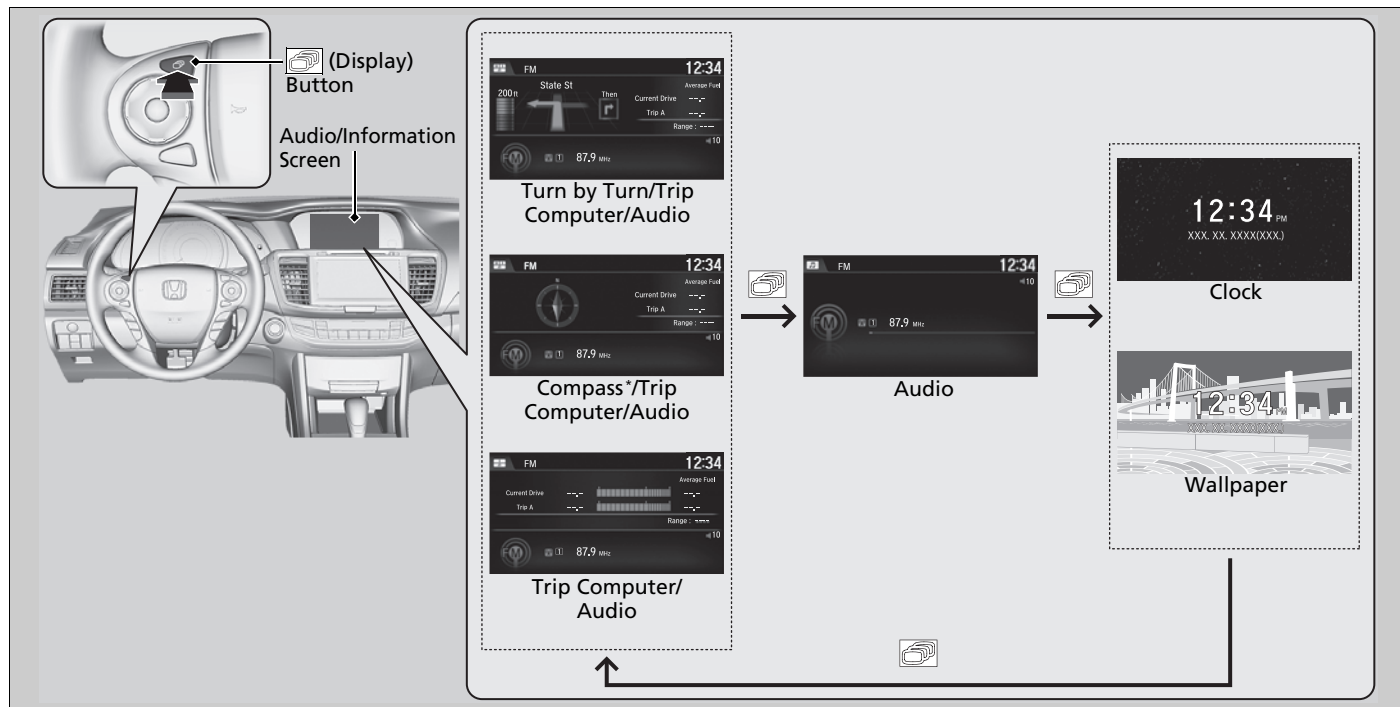
- **Station List** P. 238, 240
- **Music Search** P. 250, 253, 263, 266
- **Scan** P. 239, 248, 251, 264
- **Play Mode** P. 251, 254, 264

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status, trip computer, compass\*, Turn by Turn, and clock/wallpaper.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



### ■ Turn by Turn

Displays the Turn by Turn screen.

### ■ Trip computer

Displays the range and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

### ■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

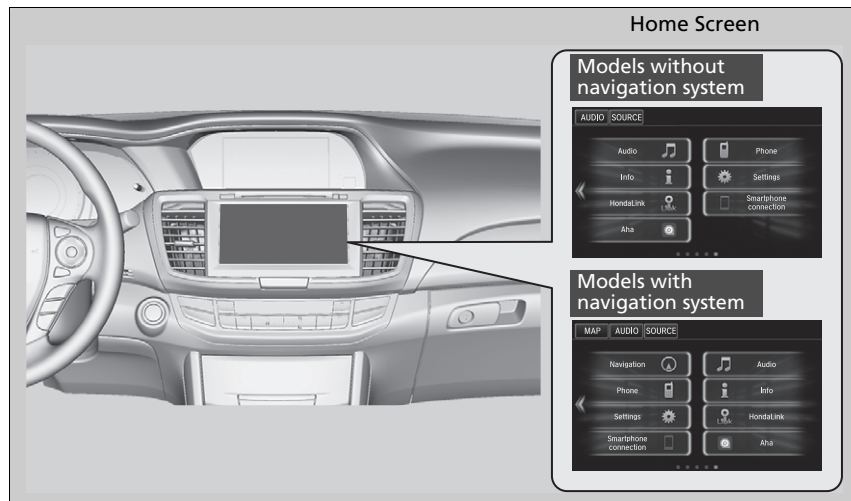
### ■ Clock/Wallpaper


Displays a clock screen.

## Audio/Information Touch Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display



Select  to go to the home screen.


Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation\***, **HondaLink**, **Aha**, **Smartphone connection**, or **App List**.

#### ■ Phone

Displays the HFL information.

➡ **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 371

## ■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**. To see all available information, **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, or **System/Device Information**, select  on the **Info Menu** screen.

### Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.  
To delete the history manually, select **Delete History** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

**Voice Info**: Displays the all commands list.

### System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the device number and the vehicle identification number (VIN).
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

## ■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

 **Customized Features** P. 314

## ■ Navigation\*

Displays the navigation screen.

 **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

\* Not available on all models



## ■ HondaLink

Connects with your smartphone\*1 to play personalized music, information, and social media streams.

➤ **HondaLink®** P. 267

## ■ Aha

Displays the Aha™ screen.

➤ **Playing Aha™** P. 261

## ■ Smartphone connection

Displays the Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™ screen.

➤ **Apple CarPlay®** P. 274

➤ **Android Auto™** P. 278

## ■ App List


Adds or removes App or Widget on the home screen.

➤ **Home Screen** P. 222

\*1: Available on specific phones only. Check *handsfreelink.honda.com* for U.S. and *www.handsfreelink.ca* for Canada for compatible phones and *hondalink.com* for U.S. and *honda.ca/hondalink* for Canada for feature details.

## Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



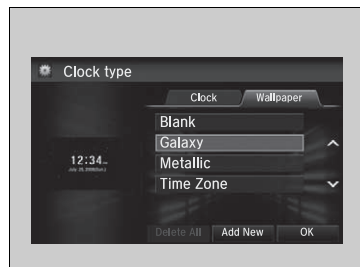
1. Select .
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information touch screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

■ **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
  - ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.


## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

## ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

## ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

Press the  (display) button to change the audio/information screen until the wallpaper is displayed.

▶ Switching the Display P. 214

## ■ Delete wallpaper

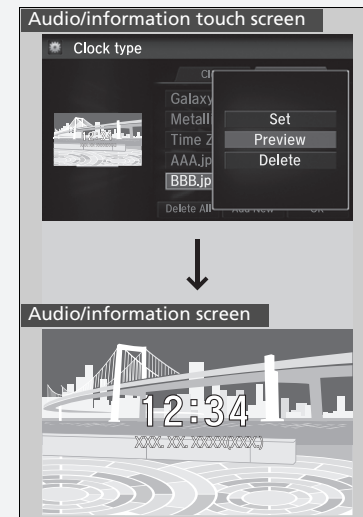
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.


## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

When the clock or wallpaper is selected on the audio/information screen, you can see a preview at full-size screen.

▶ Switching the Display P. 191

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview**.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select .

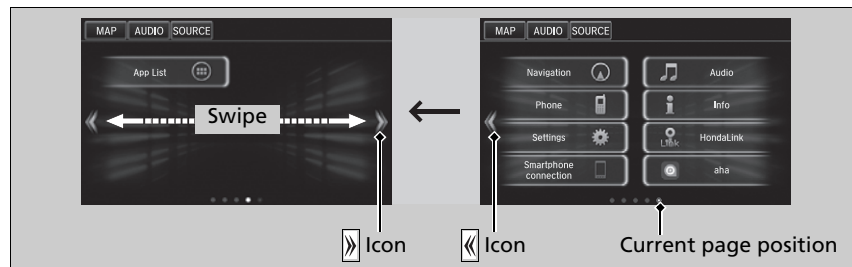
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Continued

## ■ Home Screen

### ■ To change to a next screen

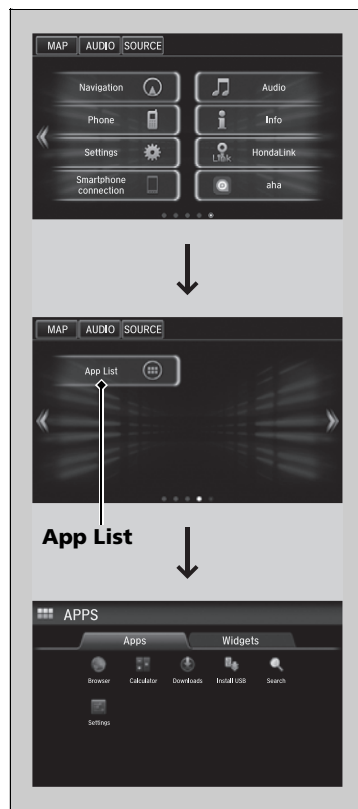




Selecting ◀ or ▶, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

## ▶▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

## ■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select .
2. Select .
3. Select **App List**.  
▶ The **APPS** screen appears.
4. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser**: Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads**: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **Install USB**: Installs and updates apps stored in the USB flash drive.
- **Search**: Displays various retrieval screens.
- **Settings**: Displays the Android setting screen.

## ▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 337


If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 337

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

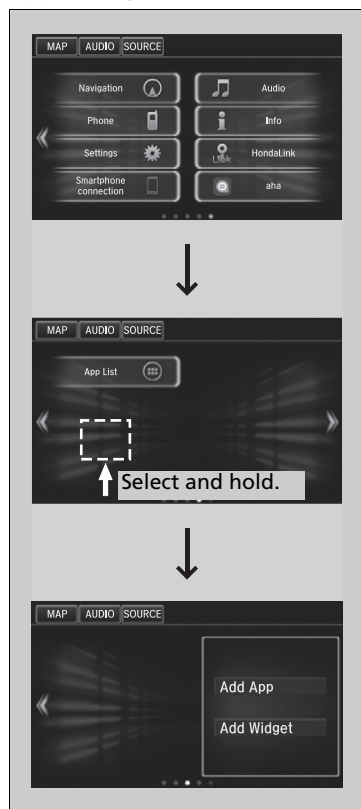
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.

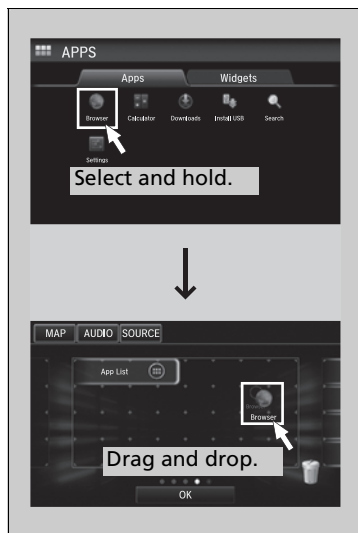
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

## ■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select .
2. Select .
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.  
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.  
▶ The **APPS** screen appears.

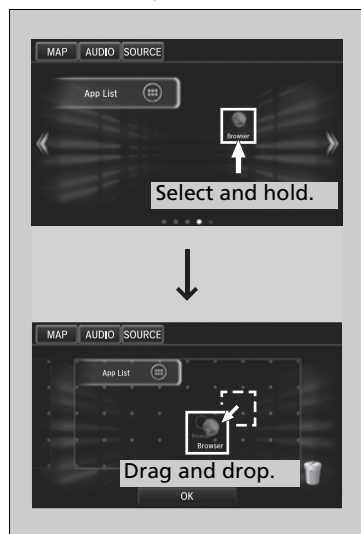


5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
7. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.



## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



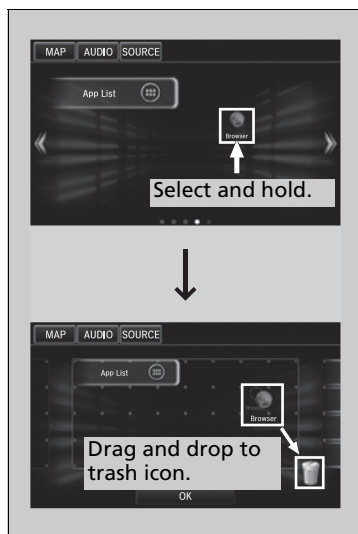
1. Select and hold an icon.  
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.  
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation\*, HondaLink, Aha, Smartphone connection, and App List** icons in the same manner.

## ■ To remove icons from the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.  
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.  
▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.  
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

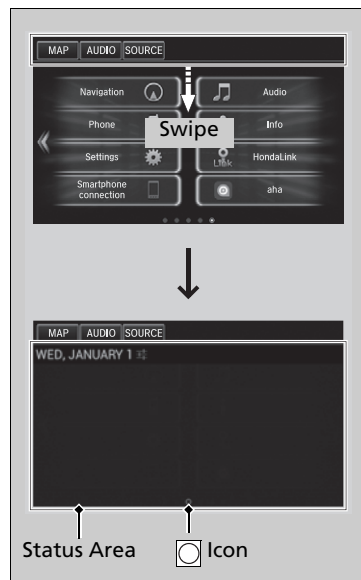
## ▶▶ To remove icons from the home screen



You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation**\*, **HondaLink**, **Aha**, **Smartphone connection**, and **App List** icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

\* Not available on all models

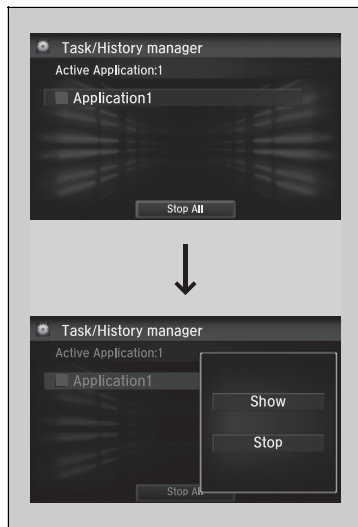
## Status Area




1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.  
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select  or swipe up the  to close the area.

## ■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold .
2. Select an app you want to close.
3. Select **Stop**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

## ⌘ Closing Apps

If you leave the apps used open in the background, some apps may stop operating properly next time using them.

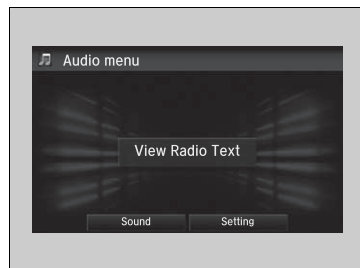
If this happens close unused apps.

To close all apps on the system, select **Stop All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the HondaLink®, Aha™ and Garmin\* apps.

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Sound




1. Select .
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select .
4. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices:  
**BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE,**  
**Subwoofer, Speed Volume Compensation**  
 (SVC).

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid,** and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

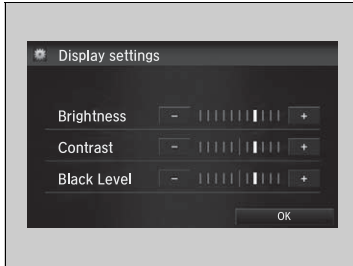
You can also adjust the sound with the following procedure.


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

# Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information touch screen.


## Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## Changing the Screen's Color Theme

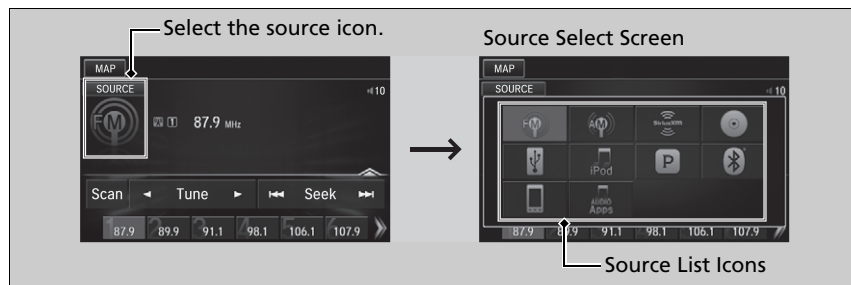


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## ►► Selecting an Audio Source



If you startup preinstalled audio apps, **AUDIO Apps** is displayed on the upper portion of the screen. These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.

You can startup those audio apps from **AUDIO Apps**.

When you are using the Aha™ screen and you want to select another source, select **SOURCE** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

## Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.



The voice control system uses the  (Talk) and  (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

### Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
- Close the windows and moonroof\*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

#### ▶▶ Voice Control Operation

When you press the  button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the  button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

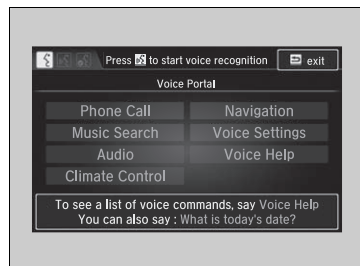
#### ▶▶ Voice Recognition


The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

\* Not available on all models




## Voice Portal Screen



When the  (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say "Voice Help" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can also see the list of commands by selecting **Info**, , and **Voice Info**.

## Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for the phone commands.

- *Dial by number*
- *Call history*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*

Phone Call commands are not available if Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™ is in use.

## Music Search\*<sup>1</sup>

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

## Audio\*<sup>1</sup>

When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- *Audio On*
- *Audio Off*
- *Radio FM*
- *Radio AM*
- *Radio SXM*
- *DISC*
- *Pandora\**
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

Pandora®\* cannot be used with Android Auto™.

## Navigation\*<sup>1</sup>

The screen changes to the navigation voice recognition screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## Voice Settings

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog** tab on the **System settings** screen.

## Trip Computer

The screen changes to the trip computer screen.

\*1: Models with navigation system

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*
- *All Commands*
- *Voice Settings*
- *Getting Started*

## ■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

\*1: Models with navigation system

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Call by Number*
- *Call by Name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*

## ■ Audio Commands\*<sup>1</sup>

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

### ■ Radio FM Commands

- *Radio tune to <87.7-107.9> FM*
- *Radio tune to <87.7 -107.9> HD <1-8> FM*
- *Radio FM preset <1-12>*

### ■ Radio AM Commands

- *Radio tune to <530-1710> AM*
- *Radio AM preset <1-6>*

### ■ Radio SXM Commands

- *SXM channel <1-999>*
- *SXM channel <station name>*

- *Radio SXM preset <1-12>*

## ■ DISC Commands

- *DISC play*
- *DISC play track <1-30>*

## ■ Pandora Commands\*

- *Pandora play*

## ■ iPod Commands

- *iPod play*
- *iPod play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

## ■ USB Commands

- *USB play*
- *USB play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

## ■ Bluetooth® audio Commands

- *Bluetooth® audio play*

### NOTE:

*Bluetooth®* Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth®* Audio devices.

## ■ On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

## ■ Music Search Commands\*1

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

### ■ Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk button and say: "Music search".

### ■ Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

## ■ Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

## ■ List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

## ■ General Commands

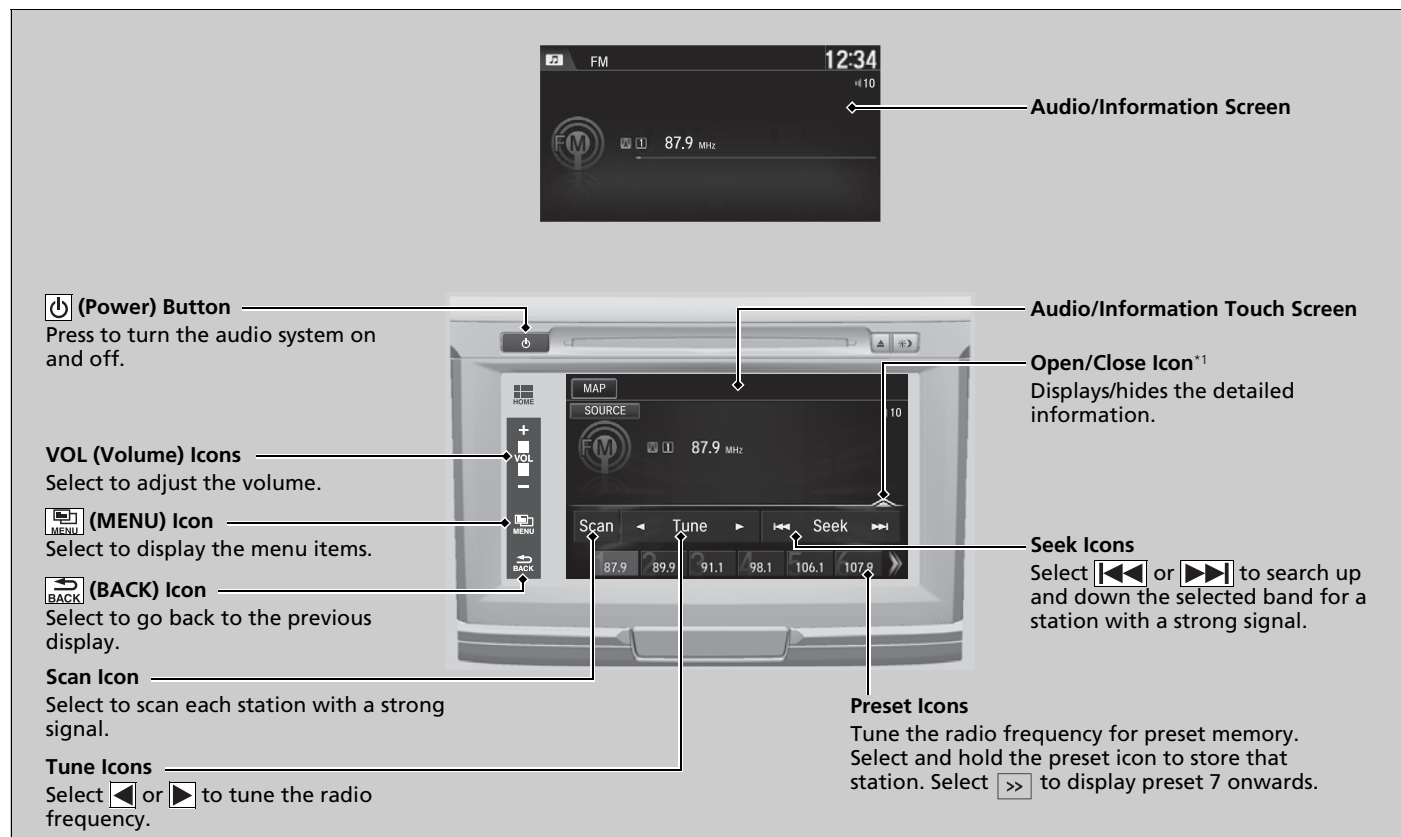
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Climate Control Commands\*1

- *Climate Control on*
- *Climate Control off*
- *Fan Speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <57-87> degrees*
- *Defrost on*
- *Defrost off*
- *Air conditioner on*
- *Air conditioner off*
- *More*
- *Climate control automatic*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Fan speed up*
- *Fan speed down*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and defrost*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

\*1: Models with navigation system

## Playing AM/FM Radio



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 188


You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

## Models with HD Radio™

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.



## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

### Models with HD Radio™

## ■ HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select .
2. Select **HD Radio Subchannel**.
3. Select the channel number.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.


### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select .
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

### ■ Scan

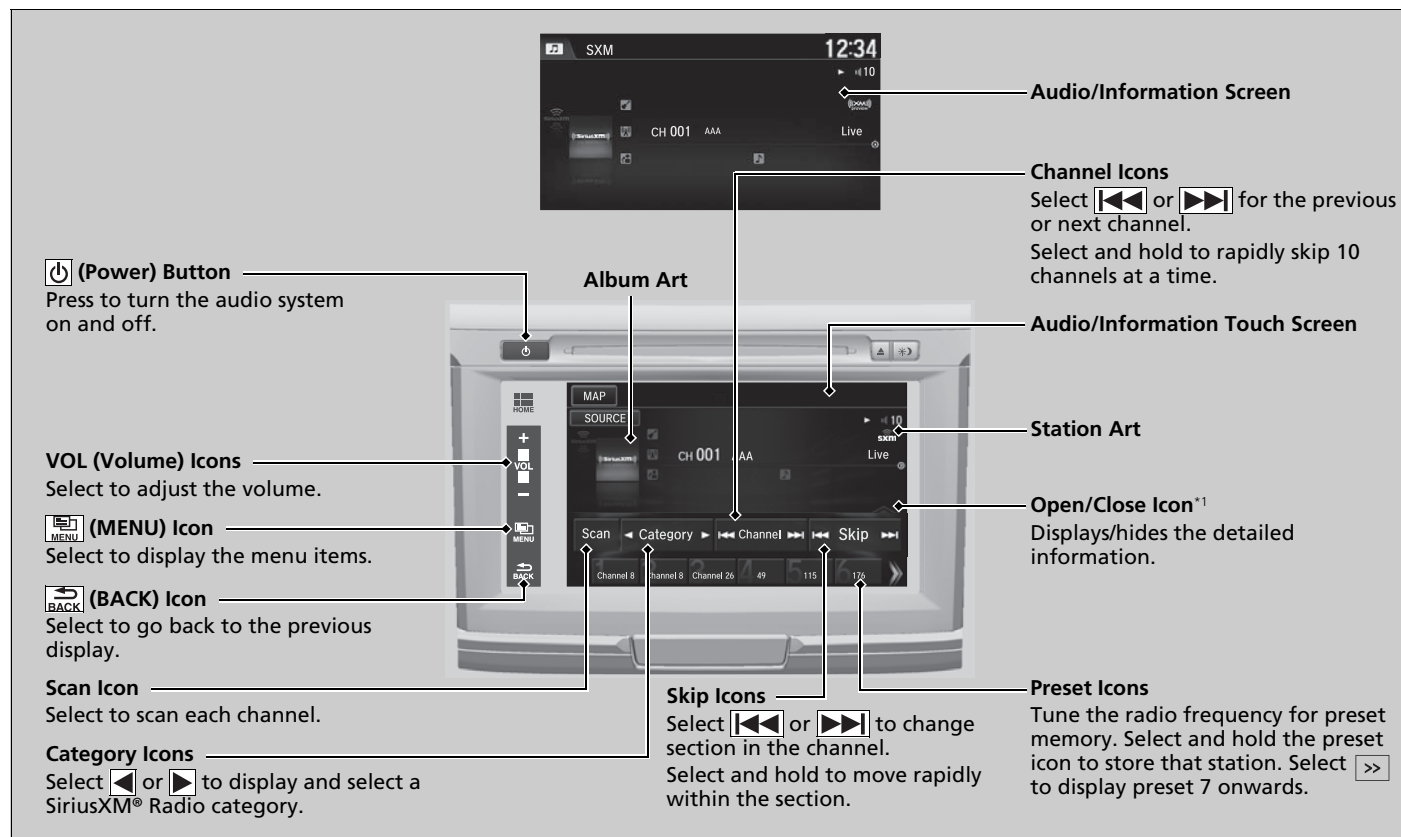
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

## Playing SiriusXM® Radio \*




\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select .
2. Select **Tune Mode**.
3. Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

### ▶▶ Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 188

#### **Tune Start:**

When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Audio settings** screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 314

## Preset Memory

To store a channel:

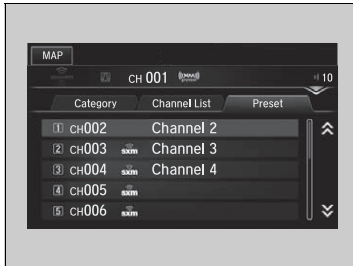
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select to hold the preset number for the station you want to store.
3. Select **Replace**.

You can also store a channel by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to four of your preferred music channels per preset.



1. Tune a station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
  - ▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.
5. Select **Combine**.

## ▶▶ Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

## ■ Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Channel List** tab.
3. Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
  - The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
4. Select the channel.


### » Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

## ■ Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes broadcast of your currently tuned channel as well as the last 30 minutes broadcast of preset channels, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

1. Select .
2. Select **Playback Position**.
3. Move the gauge to the position you want to replay.

To play or pause on playback mode:

1. Select .
2. Select **Play/Pause**.

## ■ Returning to real-time broadcast

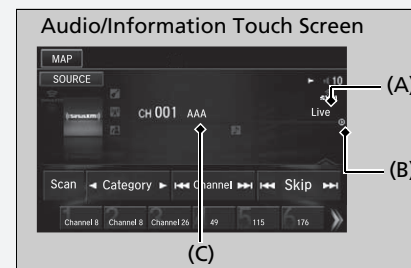
1. Select .
2. Select **Play Live Broadcast**.

## ▶▶ Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY or ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information touch screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.




- (A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast  
 (B): Replayed segment  
 (C): Length stored in memory

## ■ Live Sports Alert


While listening to SiriusXM® Radio, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from your favorite teams.

### ■ To set up a favorite team



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportsFlash Setup (Favorite Team)**.
6. Select a team.

### ■ To set up an alert message

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt)**.
6. Select **On(one time)** or **On(continue)**.

## ▶▶ Live Sports Alert


The sports alert function at SiriusXM® mode only.

### ▶▶ To set up a favorite team


Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **On(one time)** from the customize settings disables the alert feature next time you set the power mode to ON.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 314

You can also set up a favorite team by the following procedure.


1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select .
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

### ■ To set up an alert beep

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt Beep)**.
6. Select **On**.


### ■ Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
6. Select the region.
  - ▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **Unset**.

### ☒ To set up an alert beep


You can also set up an alert beep by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select .
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

### ☒ Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function in SiriusXM® mode only.

You can also set up the traffic and weather information by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select .
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

## ■ Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.

2. Select **Scan Channels**.

▶ To only scan preset stations, select **Scan Songs in Presets**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

## ▶▶ Scan

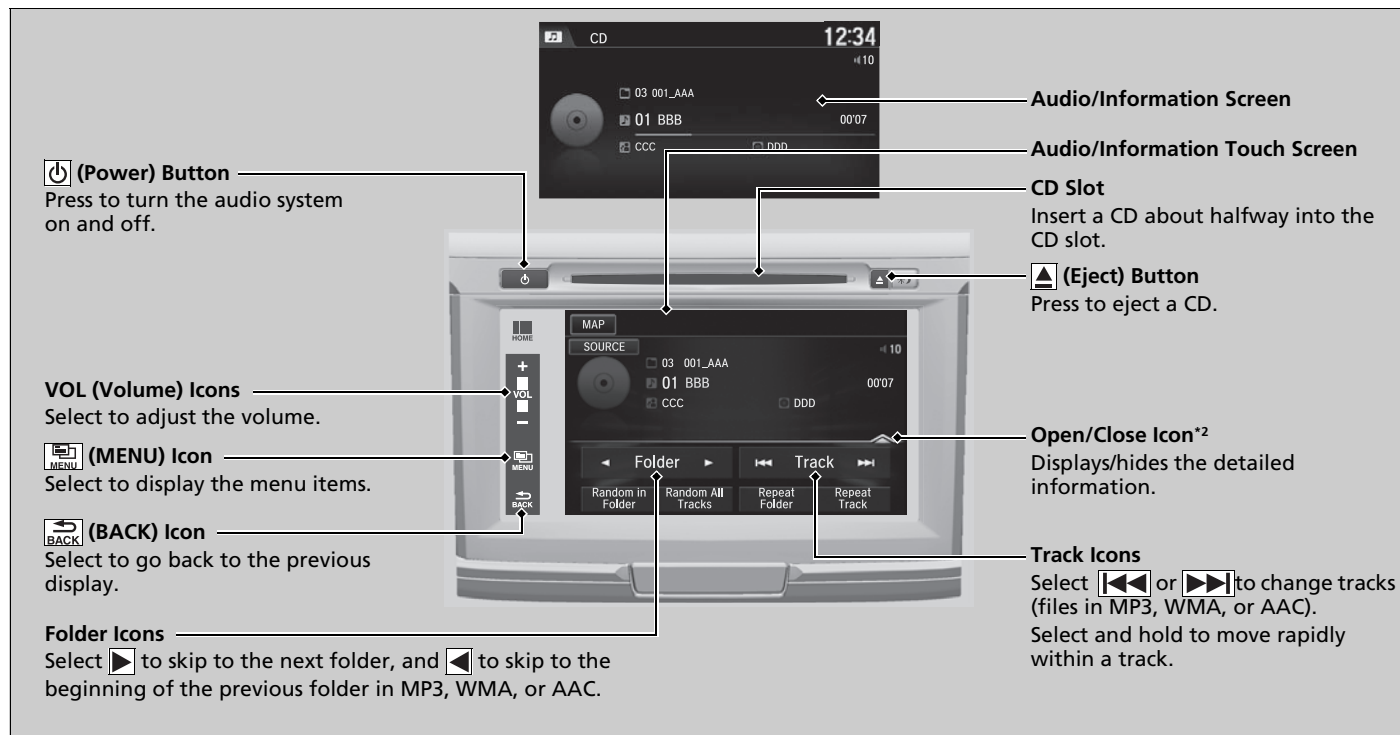
The “Scan Songs in Presets” function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

The “Featured Channels” function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

## Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.

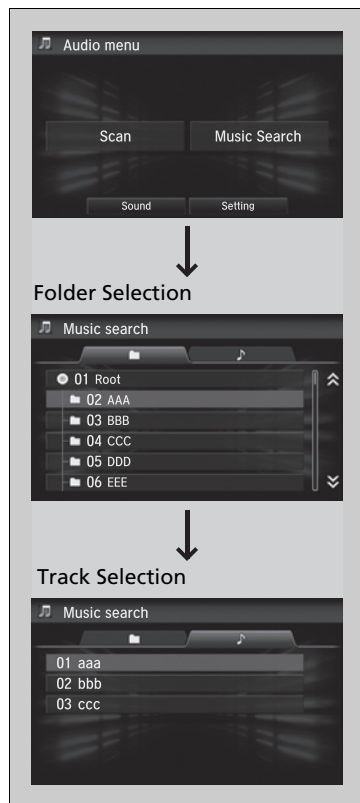


\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

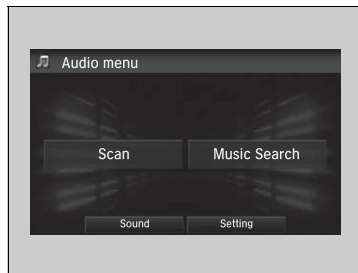
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.

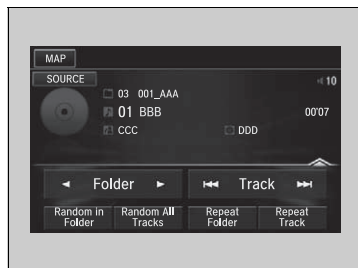


### ■ Scan

1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

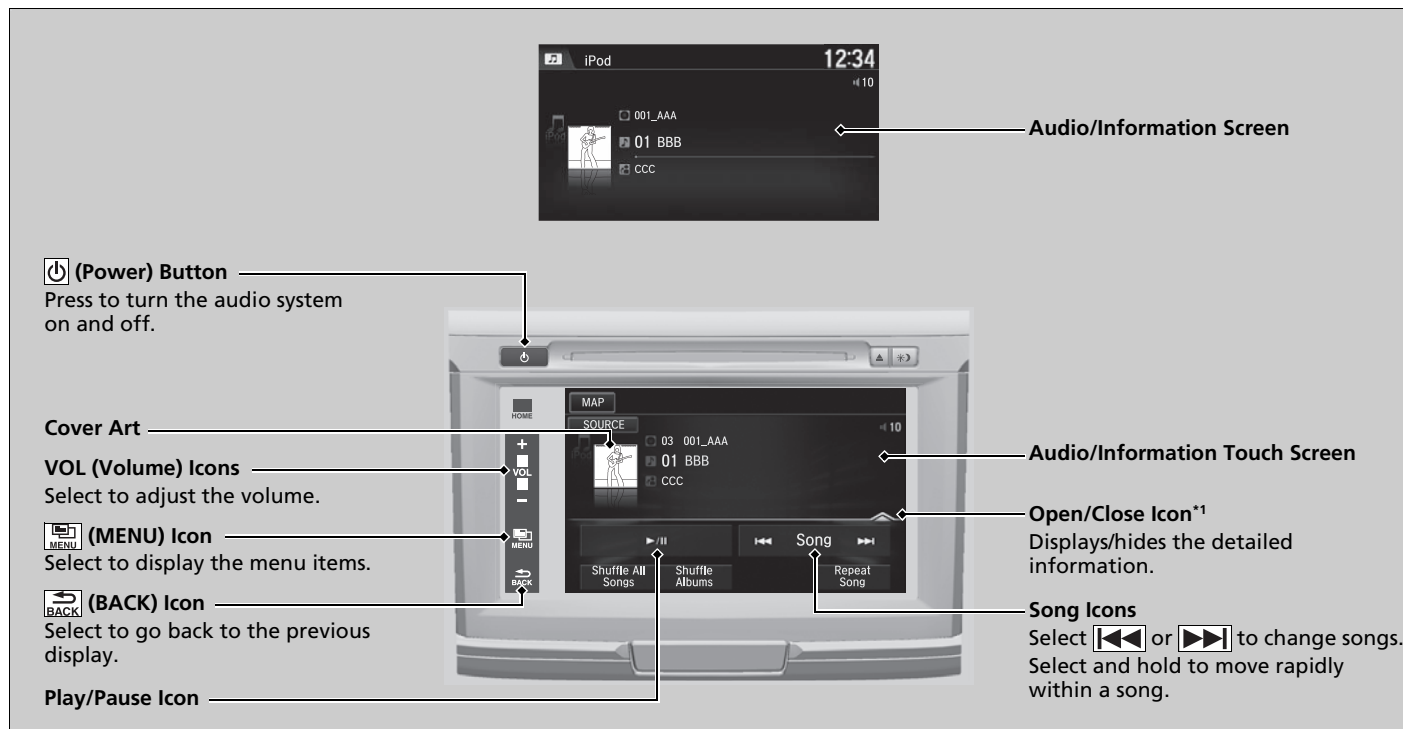
**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

## Playing an iPod

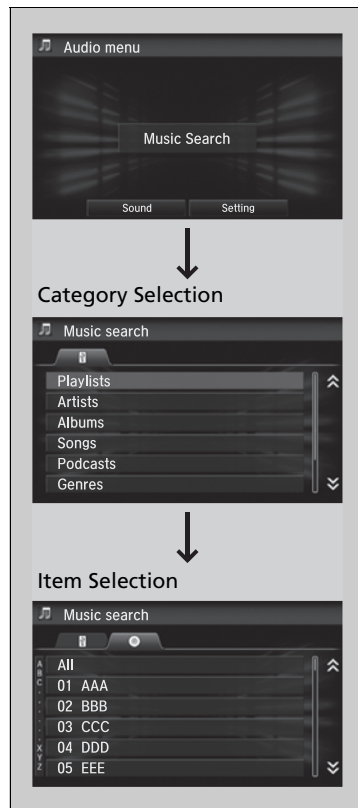
Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

➡ **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 284

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information touch screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay®, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay®.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.  
Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

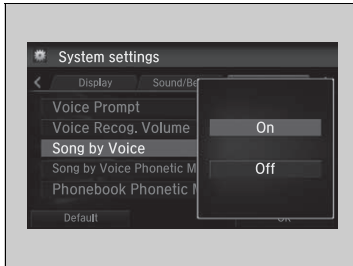
**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current track.


Models with navigation system

## Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

### ■ To enable SBV



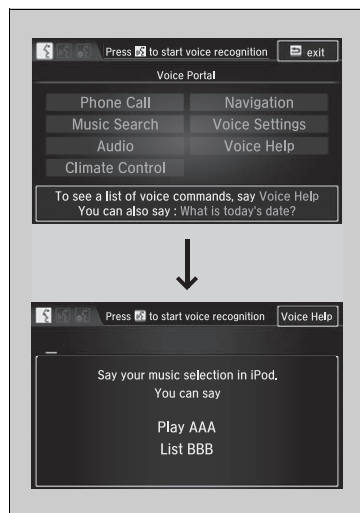
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **On** or **Off**.




### » Song By Voice™ (SBV)


Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

## ■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the  (Talk) button and say "Music Search" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Press the  button and say a command.
  - Example 1: Say "(List) 'Artist A'" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
  - Example 2: Say "Play 'Artist A'" to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the  (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the  button and say "Music Search" again to re-activate this mode.

## ► Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List

► **Song By Voice Commands** P. 236

NOTE:

Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

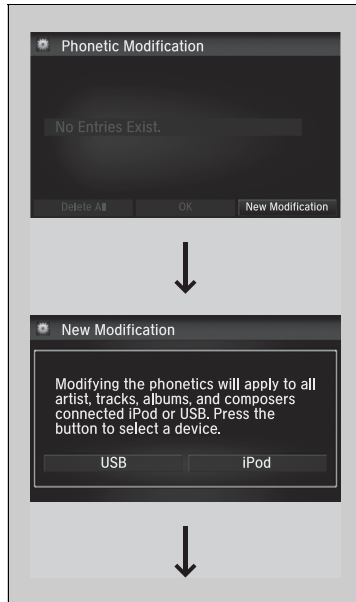
You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.


► **Phonetic Modification** P. 257

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay®. Use Siri® Eyes Free instead.

## Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.



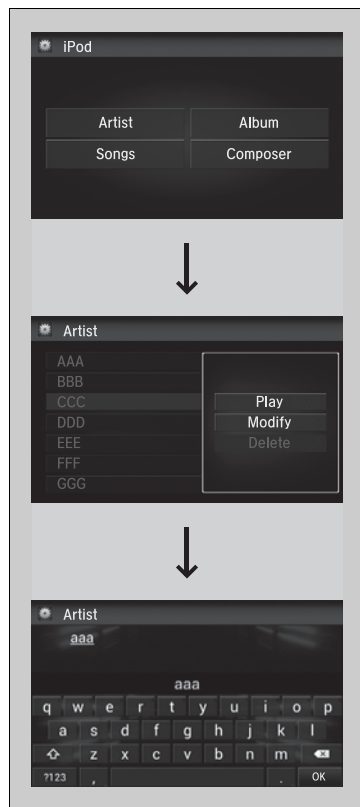
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

### Phonetic Modification

**Song by Voice Phonetic Modification** is grayed out when **Song By Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.





8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).

► The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

9. Select an entry to modify.

► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.


► To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.

► To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.

10. Select **Modify**.

11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "Artist A") when prompted.

12. Select **OK**.

► The artist "No Name" is phonetically modified to "Artist A." When in the SBV mode, you can press the  (Talk) button and use the voice command "Play 'Artist A'" to play songs by the artist "No Name."

U.S. models

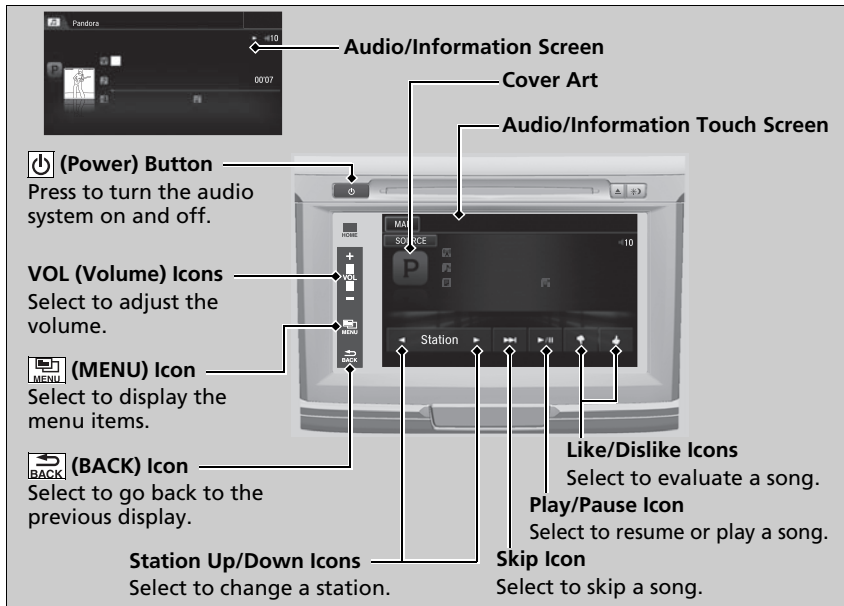
## Playing Pandora®\*

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 380

▶ **USB Port(s)\*** P. 185



### ▶▶ Playing Pandora®\*

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

If your phone is connected to Android Auto™, Pandora® is only available through the Android Auto™ interface. Visit the Android Auto™ website to check compatibility.

\* Not available on all models

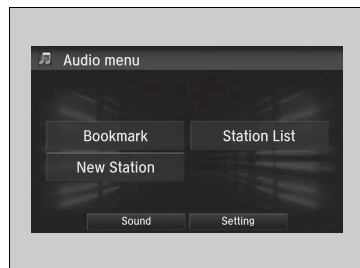
Continued

## ■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Sound**
- **Setting**

### ■ Operating a menu item




1. Select .
2. Select an item.

## ▶▶ Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.

 **Pandora®** P. 285

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

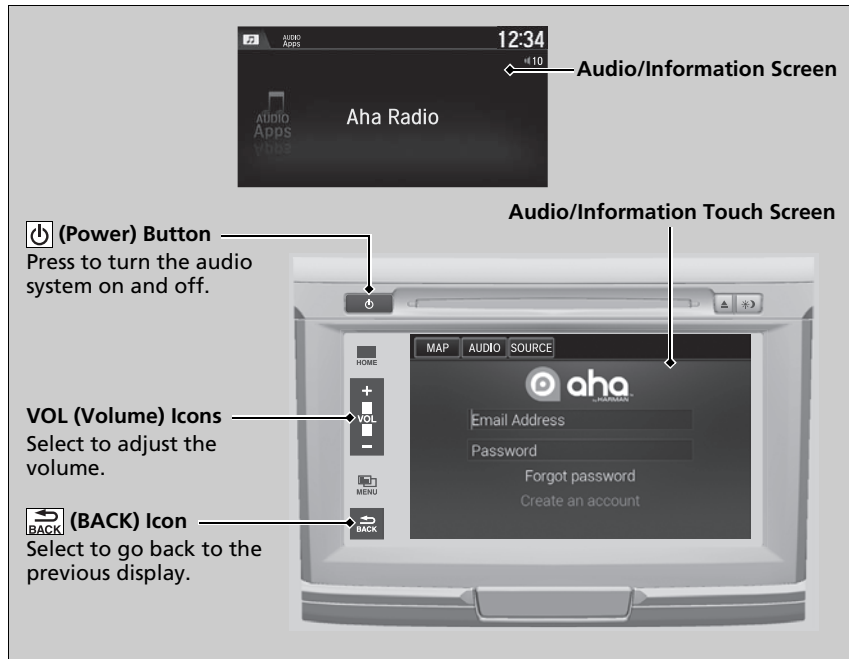
To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station. It also changes stations on the main Pandora® screen.

## Playing Aha™

Aha™ can be displayed and operated on the audio/information touch screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi or through *Bluetooth®* with the HondaLink® app downloaded to your smartphone.

❏ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 272

❏ **HondaLink®** P. 267



### ▶▶ Playing Aha™

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favorite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You must have a previously set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit [www.aharadio.com](http://www.aharadio.com) for more information.

You want to select another source, select **AUDIO** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

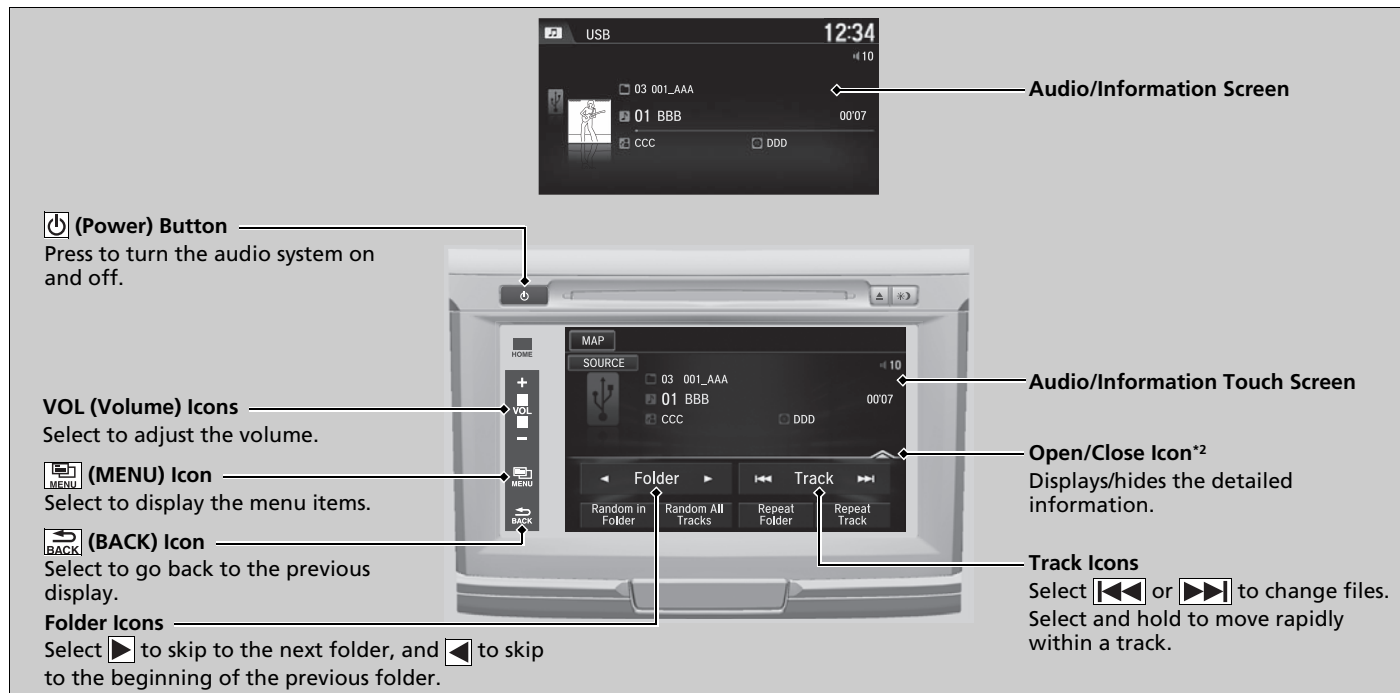
When Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™ is connected to the audio system, Aha™ can be accessed even without a Wi-Fi connection.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

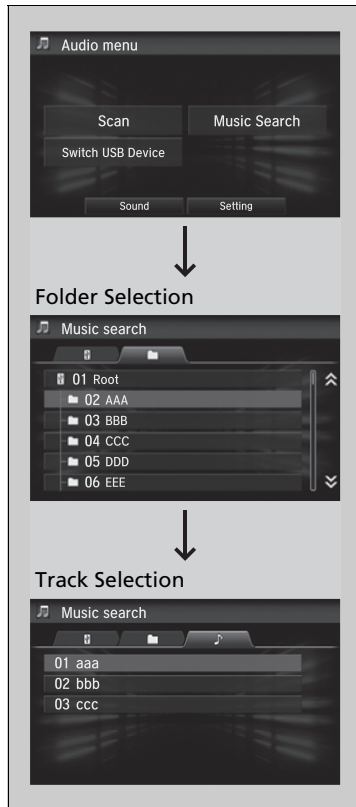
🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 185




\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.
2. Select **Music**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 288

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

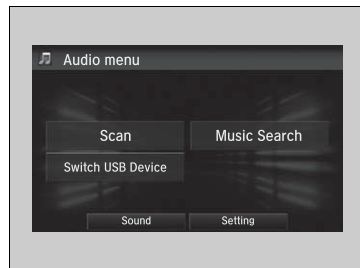
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 284

Select **Switch USB Device** in the **Audio menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

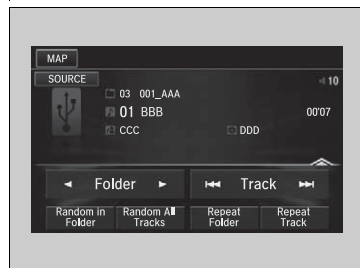


### ■ Scan

1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

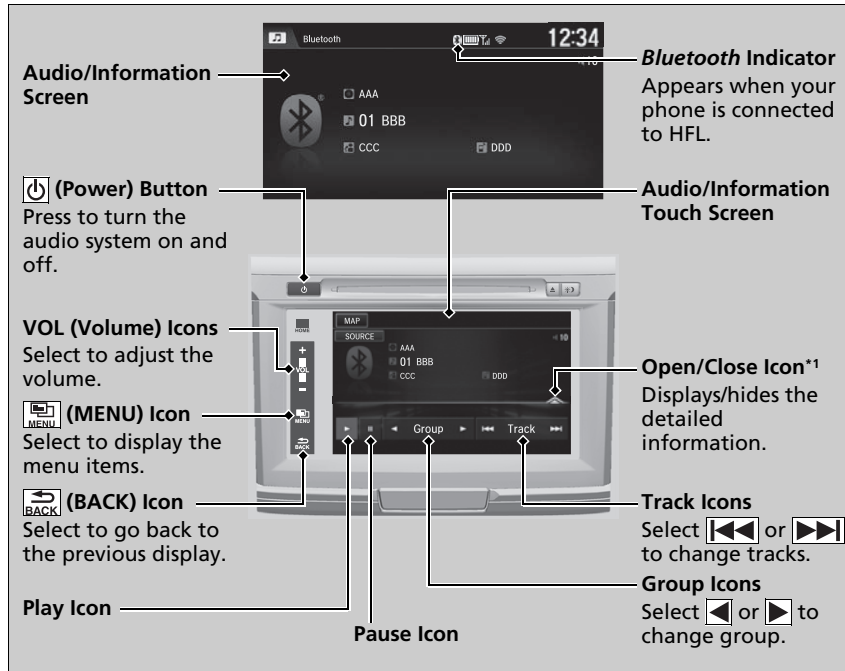
**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 380



\*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, visit <http://www.handsfreelink.com/Honda/>.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

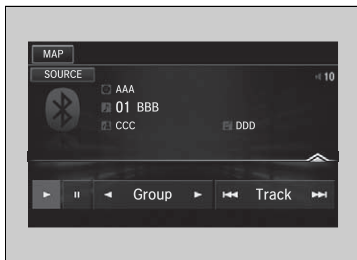
Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, you can have a second previously paired phone stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** from **Bluetooth Device List**.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 380



## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 380

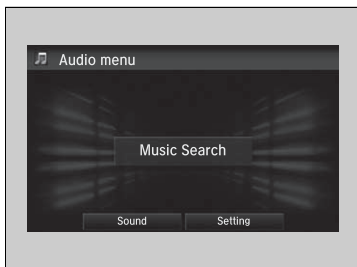
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

## ■ Searching for Music



1. Select .

2. Select **Music Search**.

3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

4. Select an item.


▶ The selection begins playing.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select .

2. Select **Settings**.

## ▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

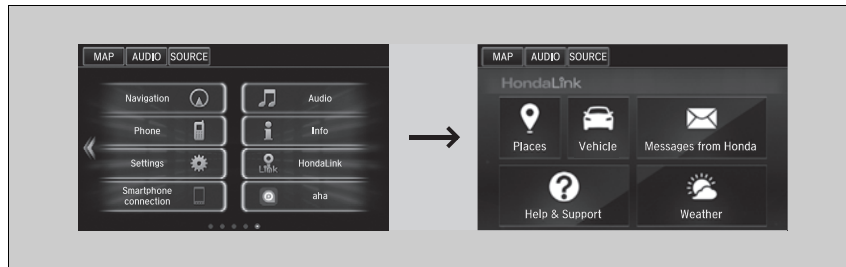
## HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth®*.

📶 **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 272

📶 **Phone Setup** P. 380

### ■ HondaLink® Menu



#### ■ Places\*

Displays restaurants, gas stations, Honda dealer, and so on. You can also navigate to the found locations via the navigation.

#### ■ Vehicle

Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

#### ■ Help & Support

Displays tips for vehicle usage, and get support via road side or customer service center.

### ▶▶ HondaLink®

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

When Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™ is connected to the audio system, HondaLink® can be accessed even without a Wi-Fi connection.

## ■ Messages from Honda

Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

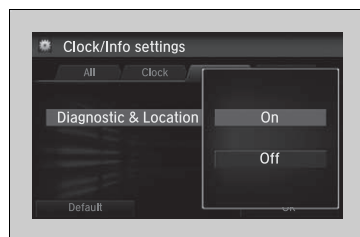
## ■ Weather


Displays a weekly five-day weather forecast for any location you want. You can change the ZIP Code at any time.

## ■ To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service

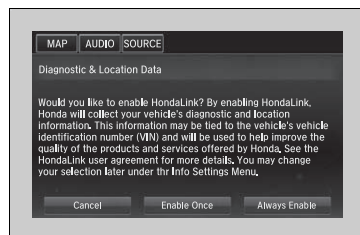
Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink® service.

### ■ To enable the HondaLink® service



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select the **HondaLink** tab.
5. Select **Diagnostic & Location Data**.
6. Select **On**.

You need to allow the consent of the location service to enable the HondaLink® service.

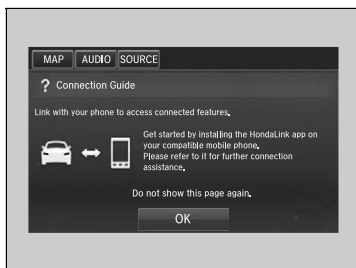


**Enable Once:** Allows only one time. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always Enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

## ■ To link with HondaLink®



You can see the **Connection Guide** screen after launching HondaLink®. If you do not need this guide, select check-box and select **OK**.

## ■ Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

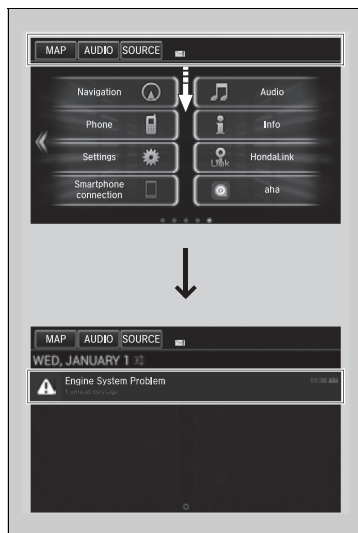
You can check the messages that are received quickly in the shortcut operation.



1. A message appears and notifies you of a new message on the header area.

▶ When the message is received, a notification ring can be heard.

2. A message icon is continuously displayed in the header area until the new message is read.



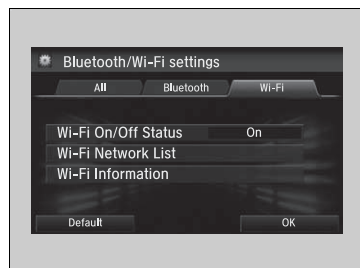
3. From the top of the screen, swipe down to see the messages.




4. Select a new message to open.

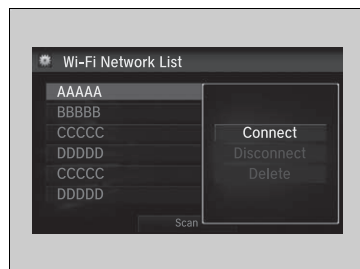
## Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the display audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information touch screen. If your phone has cell hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Network List**.
  - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
  - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
  - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
7. Select **Connect**.
  - ▶ Enter a password for your phone, and select **OK**.
  - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the list.
8. Select  to go back to the home screen.




### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on **Wi-Fi Network List**. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

## » Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

### iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.



## Apple CarPlay®

If you connect an Apple CarPlay®-compatible iPhone to the system via USB, you can use the audio/information touch screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

📶 **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

### 📶 Apple CarPlay®

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay®.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay® and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay®, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port located in the center console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay® operation.

📶 **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

To directly access the Apple CarPlay® phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay®, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay®. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay® OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

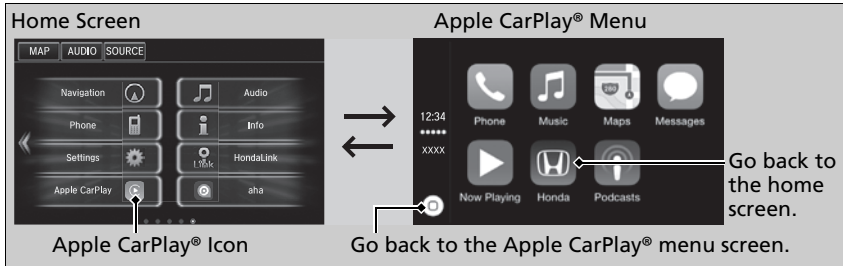
📶 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay®** P. 276

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay®, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio or *Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Apple CarPlay® is connected.

📶 **Phone Setup** P. 380

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay® is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

## Apple CarPlay® Menu



### Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

### Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

### Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

### Maps

Display Apple CarPlay® map and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay® map) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

*Continued*

## Apple CarPlay®

### Apple CarPlay® Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay® requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

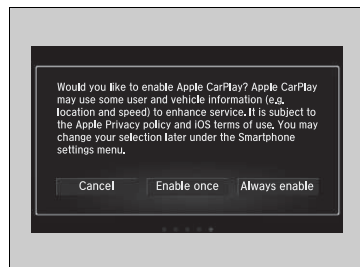
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay® functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay® functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay® performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay®. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay®

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via USB, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay®. Use of Apple CarPlay® will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay® experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information touch screen.

### ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay®



- **Enable Once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

### » Setting Up Apple CarPlay®

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay®:

Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

#### **Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay® is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay® with Siri® Eyes Free

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri® Eyes Free.



## ⌘ Operating Apple CarPlay® with Siri® Eyes Free

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri® Eyes Free:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit  
[www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via USB, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto™, you can use the audio/information touch screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto™, a tutorial will appear on the screen. We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto™.

🔗 **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

🔗 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 280

### 🔗 Android Auto™

To use Android Auto™, you need to download the Android Auto™ app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto™. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto™ phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto™ and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto™, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port in the center console storage will not enable Android Auto™ operation.

🔗 **USB Port(s\*)** P. 185

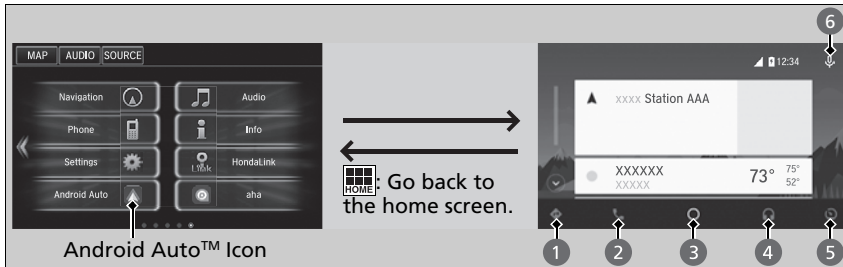
To directly access the Android Auto™ phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen.

🔗 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 280

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto™, it is not possible to use *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto™ is connected.

🔗 **Phone Setup** P. 380

## Android Auto™ Menu



### 1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

#### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto™) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

## Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto™ is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto™ homepage.

### Android Auto™ Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto™ requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto™ functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto™ functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto™ performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto™. Refer to the Android Auto™ homepage for information on compatible apps.

## ② Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

## ③ Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto™ into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## ④ Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto™. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

## ⑤ Go back to the Home screen

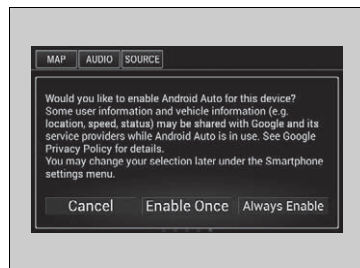
## ⑥ Voice

Operate Android Auto™ with your voice.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via USB, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated.

## ■ Enabling Android Auto™



- **Enable Once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

## ✎ Enabling Android Auto™

Only initialize Android Auto™ when you are safely parked. When Android Auto™ first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

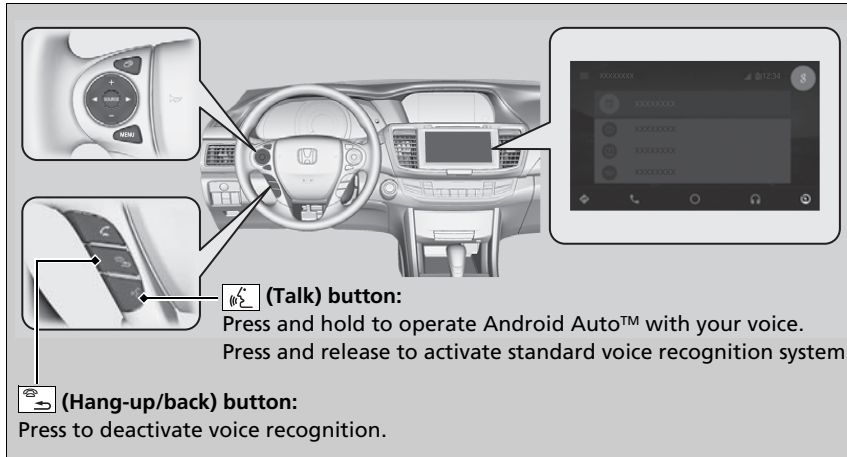
You can use the method below to change Android Auto™ settings after you have completed the initial setup:  
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto

## Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto™ is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto™ with your voice.




## ▣ Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:


- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto™ homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.



## Siri® Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 380

### Using Siri® Eyes Free



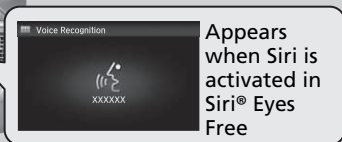
**(Hang-up/back) Button**

Press to deactivate Siri® Eyes Free.



**(Talk) Button**

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.



Appears  
when Siri is  
activated in  
Siri® Eyes  
Free

While in Siri® Eyes Free:

The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

### ▶▶ Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.






We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri® Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

### ▶▶ Using Siri® Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li> </ul>
<b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please Check Owner's Manual</b> <b>Push Eject<sup>*1</sup></b>  <b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please check Owner's Manual</b> <b>Please push eject button<sup>*2</sup></b>	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 290</li> </ul> </li> <li>If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc.</li> <li>Insert a different disc.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li> </ul> </li> <li>If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</p>
<b>Mecha Error</b>		
<b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 290</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Check Disc</b>	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 290</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Heat Error</b>	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li> </ul>

\*1:Models with one display

\*2:Models with two displays

# iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual* <sup>1</sup>  The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual* <sup>2</sup>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty.  USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.  iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

\*1:Models with one display  
\*2:Models with two displays

U.S. models

## Pandora®

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.  
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with one display

Error Message	Solution
<b>Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>There is no station list in the device. Please add the station list to your device.</b>	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
<b>Music licenses force us to limit the number of tracks you may skip each hour.</b>	Appears when you try to skip a song or select <b>Dislike</b> over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
<b>Unable to save rating. Unable to save bookmark or Unable to skip</b>	Appears when the commanded operation is failed. Try again later.
<b>No data</b>	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
<b>PANDORA ver unsupported</b>	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
<b>PANDORA system maintenance</b>	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
<b>Cannot connect to PANDORA when stopped. Check your mobile phone</b>	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
<b>Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when data transfer has failed 10 times. Try again later.</li> <li>• Appears when condition for transferring data is unstable. Try again later.</li> </ul>
<b>Unable to play PANDORA. Music Licensing restricts play in this area.</b>	Appears when Pandora® service is not available in the current area.


Models with two displays

Error Message	Solution
To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
Unable to rate track. Please try again. Skip limit reached.	Appears when you try to skip a song or select <b>Like/Dislike</b> over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
Unable to play Pandora. Please try again later. Unable to retrieve a track explanation. Please try again later. Unable to create bookmark. Please try again later.	Appears when the commanded operation has failed. Try again later.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
Pandora App version is not supported	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
Unable to complete the operation. Please try again later.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
Unable to connect Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
Unable to connect Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® app is not installed on your device. Install Pandora® app to the your device.

Models with two displays

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.	Error has occurred within app, select <b>OK</b> on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?	App is not responding. Select <b>Wait</b> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <b>OK</b> to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform <b>Factory Data Reset</b> .  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 337

\*1:\*\*\*\*part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

## SiriusXM® Radio Service \*

### ■ Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID in the screen, select **Channel 0**.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

### ■ Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information touch screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

### ■ SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

#### **Channel Not Subscribed:**

You are not subscribed to the channel selected.

#### **Subscription Updated:**

SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.

#### **Channel Not Available:**

No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.

#### **No Signal:**

The signal is too weak in the current location.

#### **Antenna Disconnected:**

The SiriusXM® antenna is disconnected. Contact a dealer.

### ▶▶ Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:

- US: SiriusXM® Radio at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) or 1-800-852-9696
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca), or 1-877-209-0079

### ▶▶ Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:

- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

## Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



### CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

#### Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.



## ■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

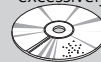
## ►► Protecting CDs

### NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

### Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs



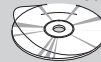
Bubbled/  
Wrinkled



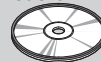
With Label/  
Sticker



Using  
Printer Label  
Kit

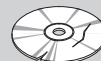


Sealed

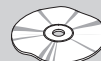


With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs



Chipped/  
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



3-inch  
(8-cm)  
CD

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### ■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2005 and 2012* <sup>1</sup>
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) released between 2005 and 2010* <sup>2</sup>
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5* <sup>1</sup>
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s* <sup>2</sup>

\*1: Models with one display

\*2: Models with two displays

### ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

#### ⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

#### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Models with two displays

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay®/Android Auto™

### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY® IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO™ IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO™ TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO™ APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO™ TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO™, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO™.

## DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY® OR ANDROID AUTO™ (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.


TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA’S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS (\$5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Models with two displays

## About Open Source Licenses

---



To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

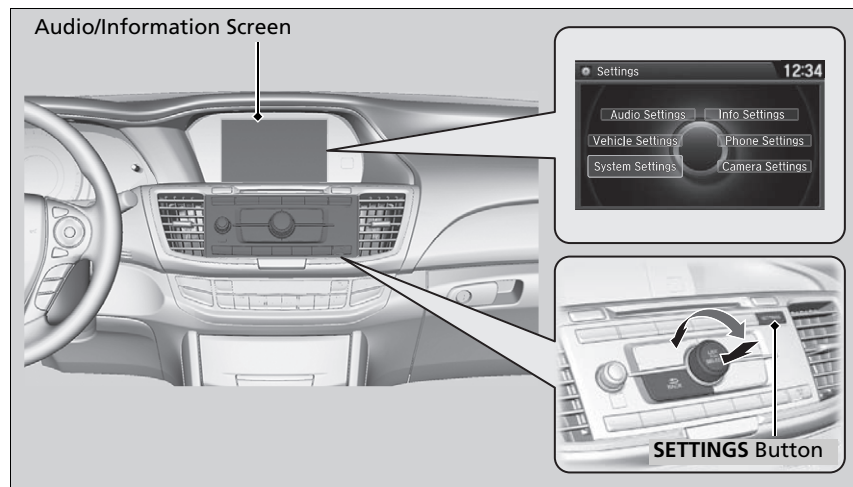
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**, then open the **Others** tab.
4. Select **Detail Information**.
5. Select **About device**.
6. Select **Legal information**.
7. Select **Open source licenses**.

## Models with one display

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **SETTINGS** button, rotate  to select a setting item, and press .



## Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

## How to customize

To customize other features, rotate , and press .

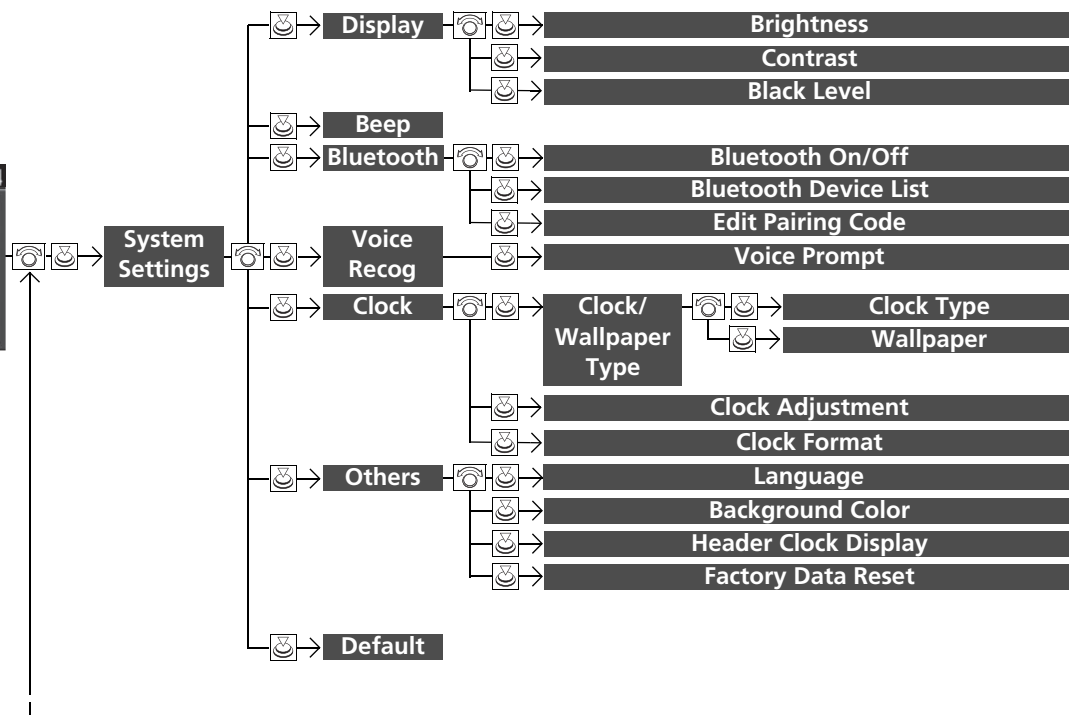
➔ **List of customizable options** P. 302

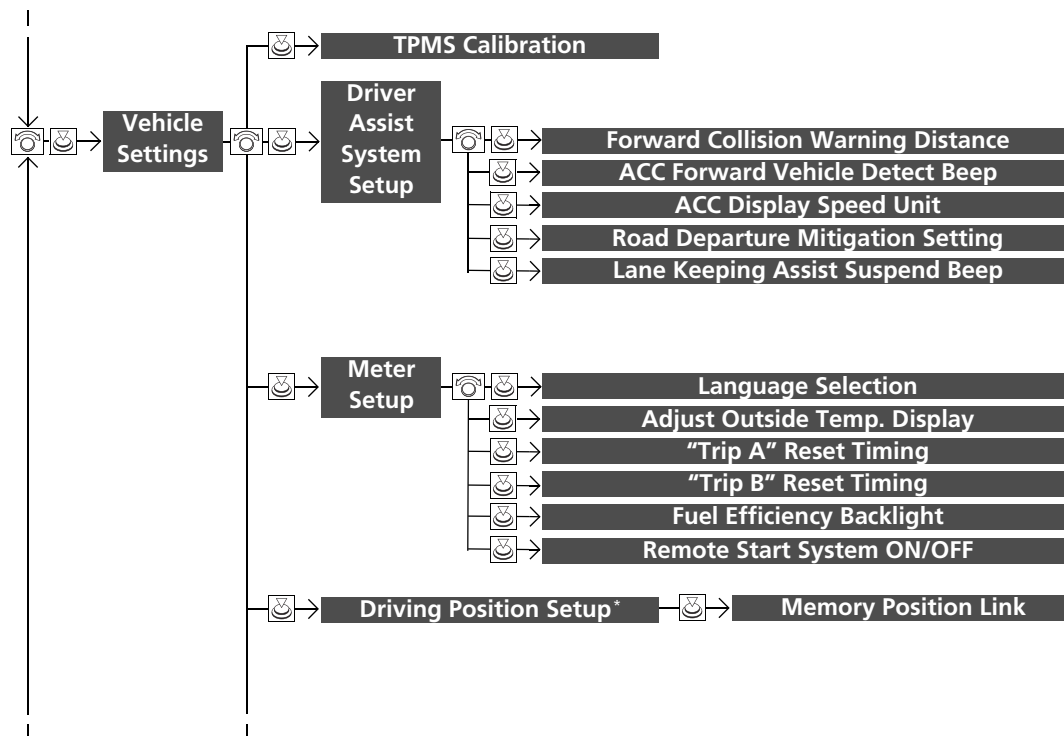
## ■ Customization flow

Press the **SETTINGS** button.

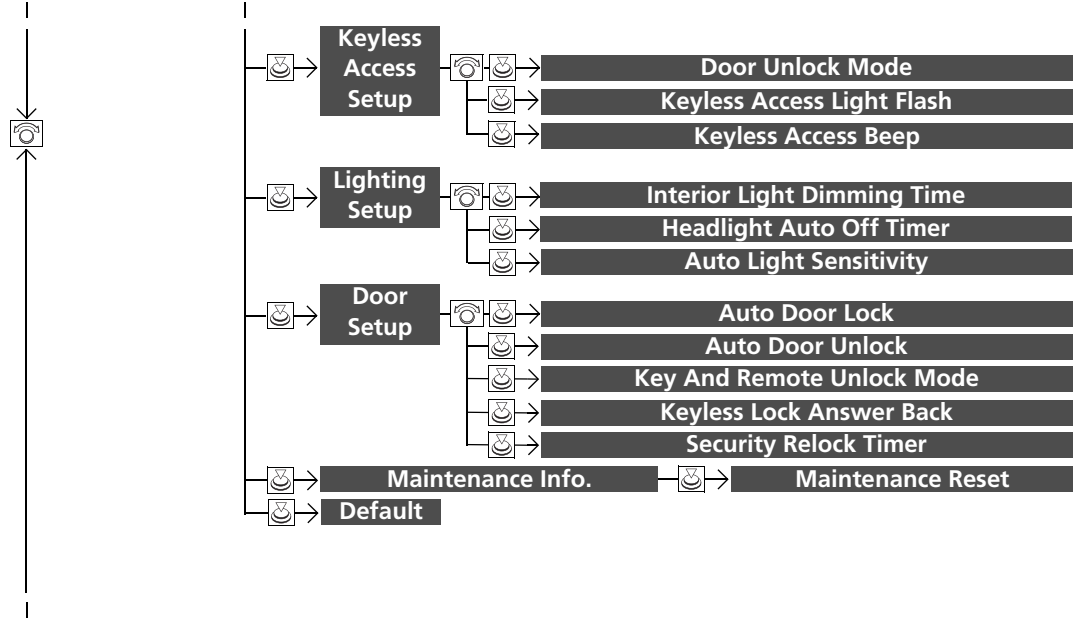


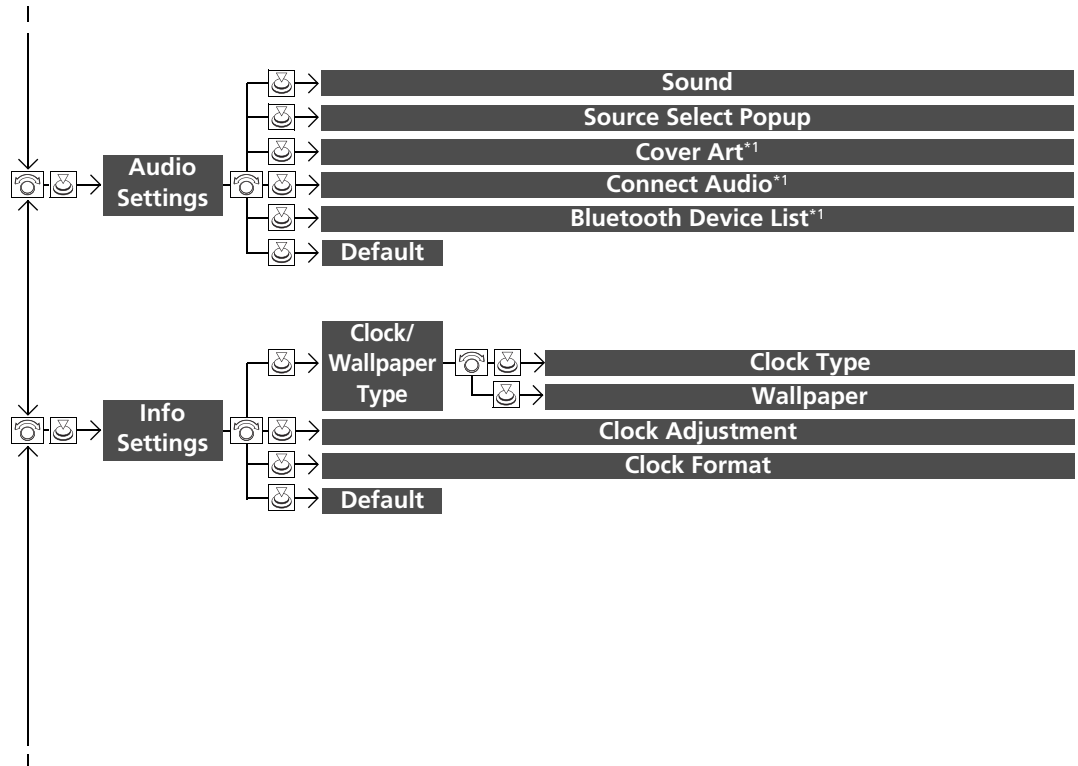
Features



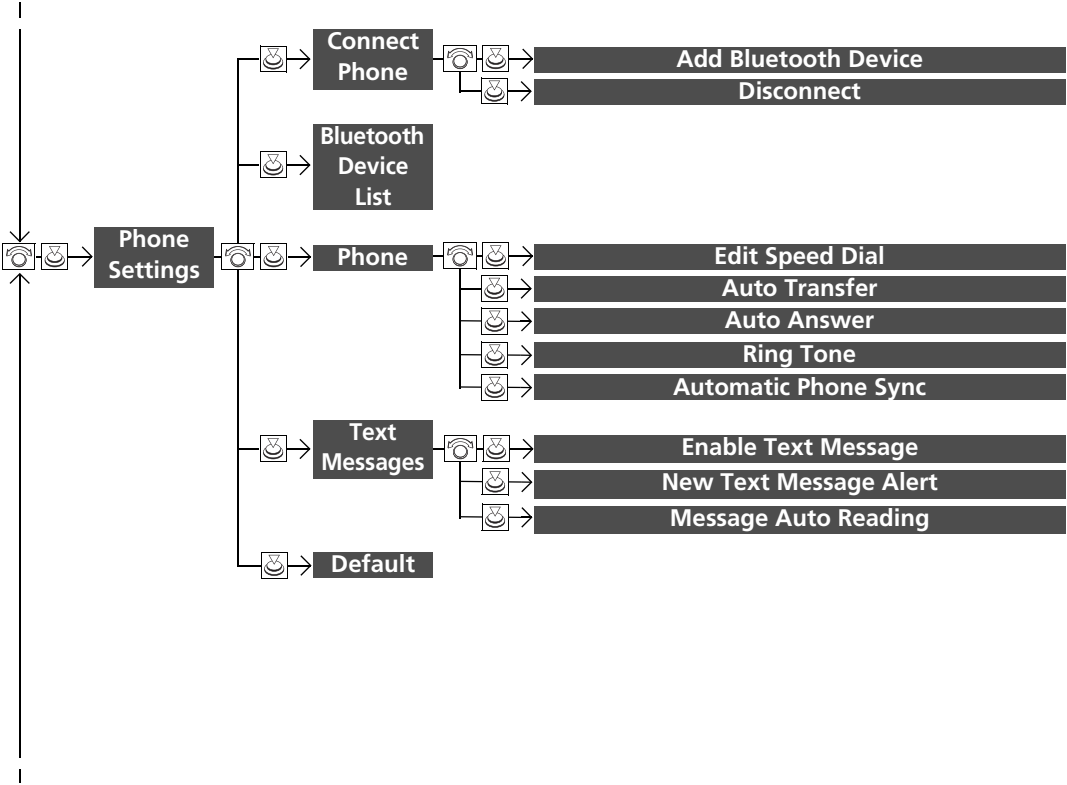


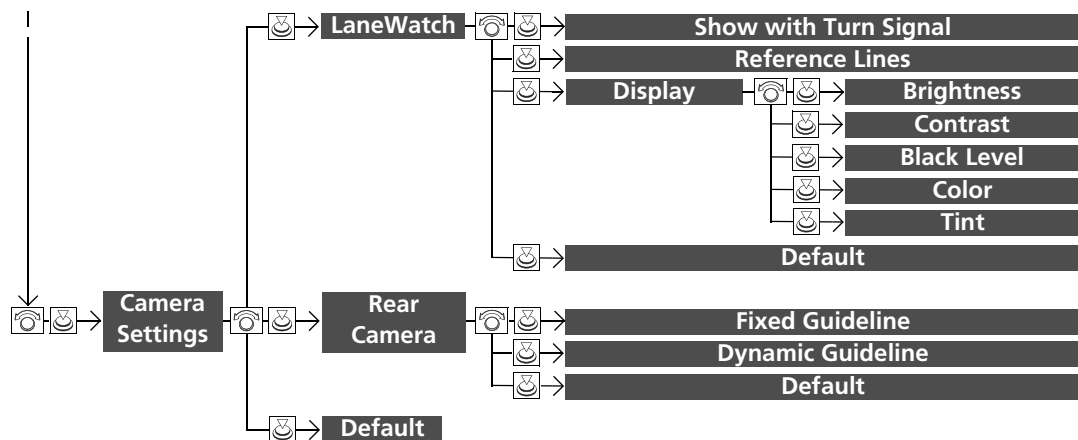






\*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.








■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Beep		Selects whether a beeper sounds when you operate the selector knob.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	Blue-tooth	Bluetooth On/Off	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a security PIN. 📄 Phone Setup P. 347	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Changes a pairing code. 📄 To change the pairing code setting P. 349	Random/Fixed* <sup>1</sup>
	Voice Recog	Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	Beginner* <sup>1</sup> /Expert

\* 1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	Clock	Clock Type	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital <sup>*1</sup> / Small Digital/Off
		Clock/ Wallpaper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li><li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li><li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li></ul>  <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 193	Blank/Galaxy <sup>*1</sup> / Metallic/Add New
		Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock.  <b>Clock</b> P. 118	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H <sup>*1</sup> /24H
		Language	Changes the display language.	English <sup>*1</sup> /French/ Spanish
	Others	Background Color	Changes the background color of the audio/ information screen.	Blue <sup>*1</sup> /Amber/Red/ Green
		Header Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default.  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 313	Yes/No
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No	

<sup>\*1</sup>:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Driver Assist System Setup	TPMS Calibration	Cancels/Calibrates the TPMS. <b>Cancel</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Calibrate</b>
		Forward Collision Warning Distance	Changes at which distance the CMBS™ alerts. <b>Long/Normal</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Short</b>
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range. <b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		ACC Display Speed Unit	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display. <b>mph</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>km/h</b> (U.S.) <b>mph/km/h</b> <sup>*1</sup> (Canada)
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system. <b>Normal</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Wide/Warning Only</b>
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended. <b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Meter Setup	<b>Language Selection</b>	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display. <b>English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>
		<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. <b>-5°F ~ ±0°F<sup>*1</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)</b>
		<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A. <b>With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B. <b>With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Remote Start System ON/OFF</b>	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Driving Position Setup<sup>*</sup></b>	<b>Memory Position Link</b>	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

<sup>\*1</sup>:Default Setting

<sup>\*</sup> Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Keyless Access Setup	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. <b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/ All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	Lighting Setup	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. <b>60seconds/ 30seconds<sup>*1</sup>/ 15seconds</b>
		<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. <b>60seconds/ 30seconds/ 15seconds<sup>*1</sup>/ 0seconds</b>
		<b>Auto Light Sensitivity</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. <b>Max/High/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/ Low/Min</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Door Setup	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock. <b>With Vehicle Speed<sup>*1</sup>/ Shift from P/Off</b>
		<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. <b>All Doors When Driver's Door Opens<sup>*1</sup>/ All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off</b>
		<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote. <b>Driver Door<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. <b>90seconds/ 60seconds/ 30seconds<sup>*1</sup></b>
	Maintenance Info.	<b>Maintenance Reset</b>	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service. —
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Vehicle Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

<sup>\*1</sup>:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 195	-6 ~ C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +6 (Bass and Treble), -9 ~ C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +9 (Fader and Balance), Off/Low/Mid <sup>*1</sup> /High (SVC)
	Source Select Popup	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the <b>AUDIO</b> button is pressed.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>
	iPod, USB, or Pandora <sup>®</sup> * mode Cover Art	Turns on and off the cover art display.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Audio or Pandora <sup>®</sup> * mode Connect Audio	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio device to HFL.	—
	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Audio or Pandora <sup>®</sup> * mode Bluetooth Device List	Edits or deletes a <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio device paired to HFL.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No

\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info Settings	Clock/ Wall- paper type	Clock Type	See <b>System Settings</b> on P. 302 to P. 303	
		Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment		
		Clock Format		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	Connect Phone	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➤ Phone Setup P. 347	—
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➤ Phone Setup P. 347	—
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➤ Speed Dial P. 358	—
	Auto Transfer	Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	Phone Auto Answer	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.	On/Off* <sup>1</sup>
	Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	Text Messages		
	Enable Text Message	Turns the text message function on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	New Text Message Alert	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text message.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>
	Message Auto Reading	Sets the system to automatically read an incoming text message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>On</b>- A text message is always read aloud.</li><li>• <b>Off</b>- A text message is not read aloud.</li><li>• <b>Auto</b>- A text message is read aloud only when driving.</li></ul>	On/Off/Auto <sup>*1</sup>
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No

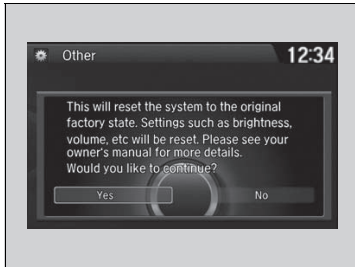
\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Camera Settings	Lane-Watch	Show with Turn Signal	Select whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.	On*/Off	
		Reference Lines	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On*/Off	
		Display	Brightness	Adjusts the LaneWatch display settings.	—
			Contrast		
			Black Level		
			Color		
			Tint		
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the LaneWatch group as default.	Yes/No		
	Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On*/Off	
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On*/Off	
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera group as default.	Yes/No	
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Camera Settings group as default.		Yes/No	

\* 1: Default Setting

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Other**, then **Factory Data Reset**.
- ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to reset the settings.
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press again to reset the settings.
- ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
- Press to select **OK**.

### Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:

- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and each item settings.

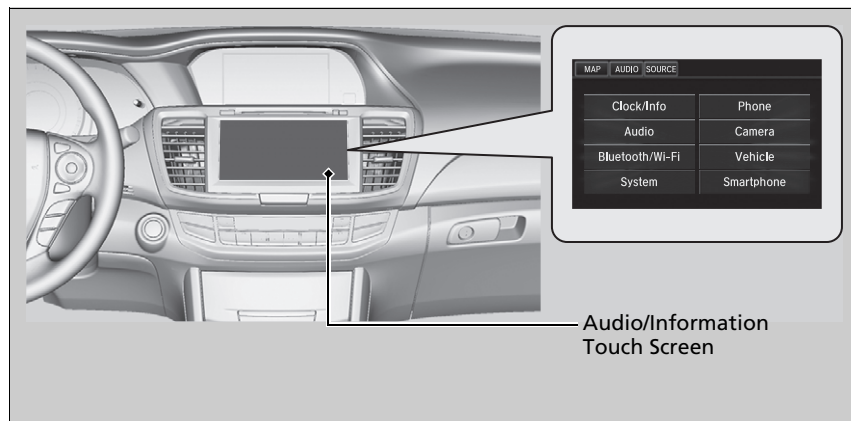


## Models with two displays

Use the audio/information touch screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

With the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



## Customized Features

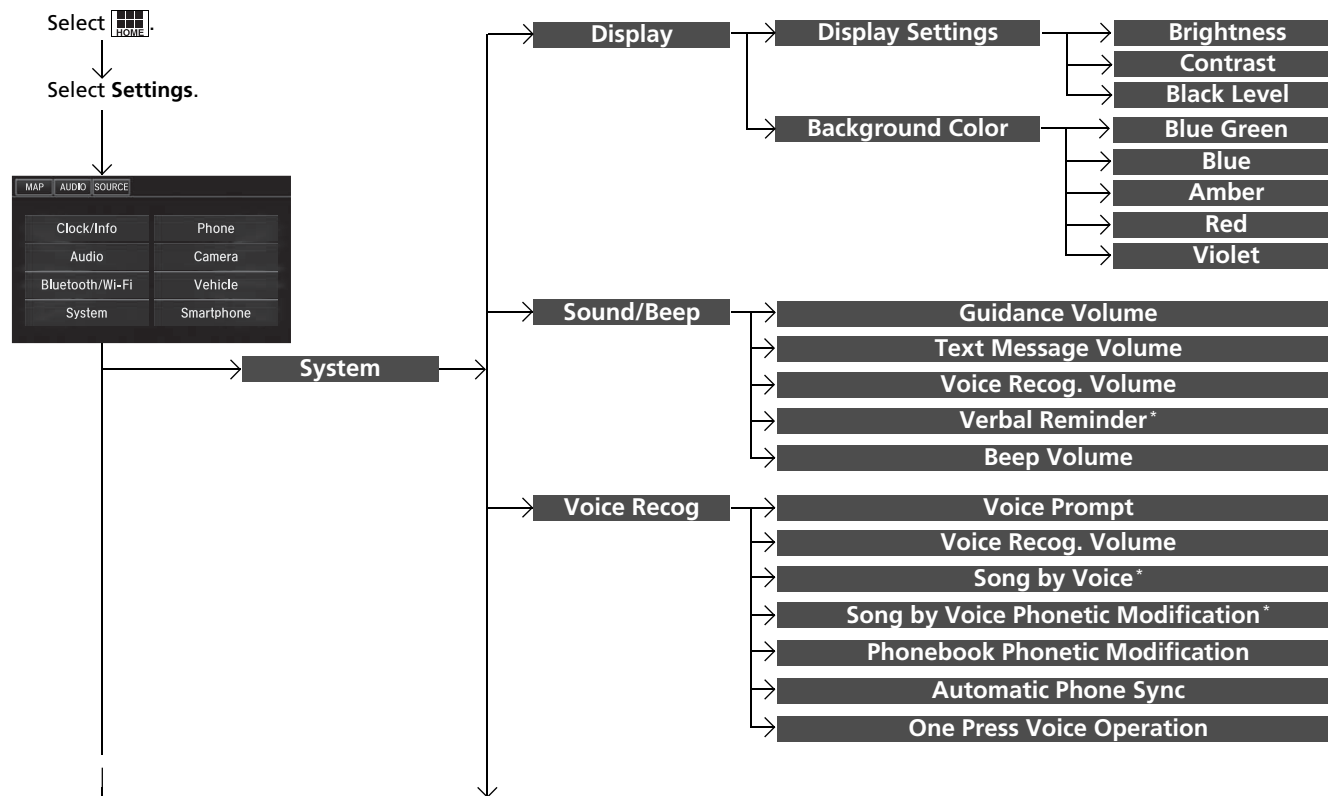
When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

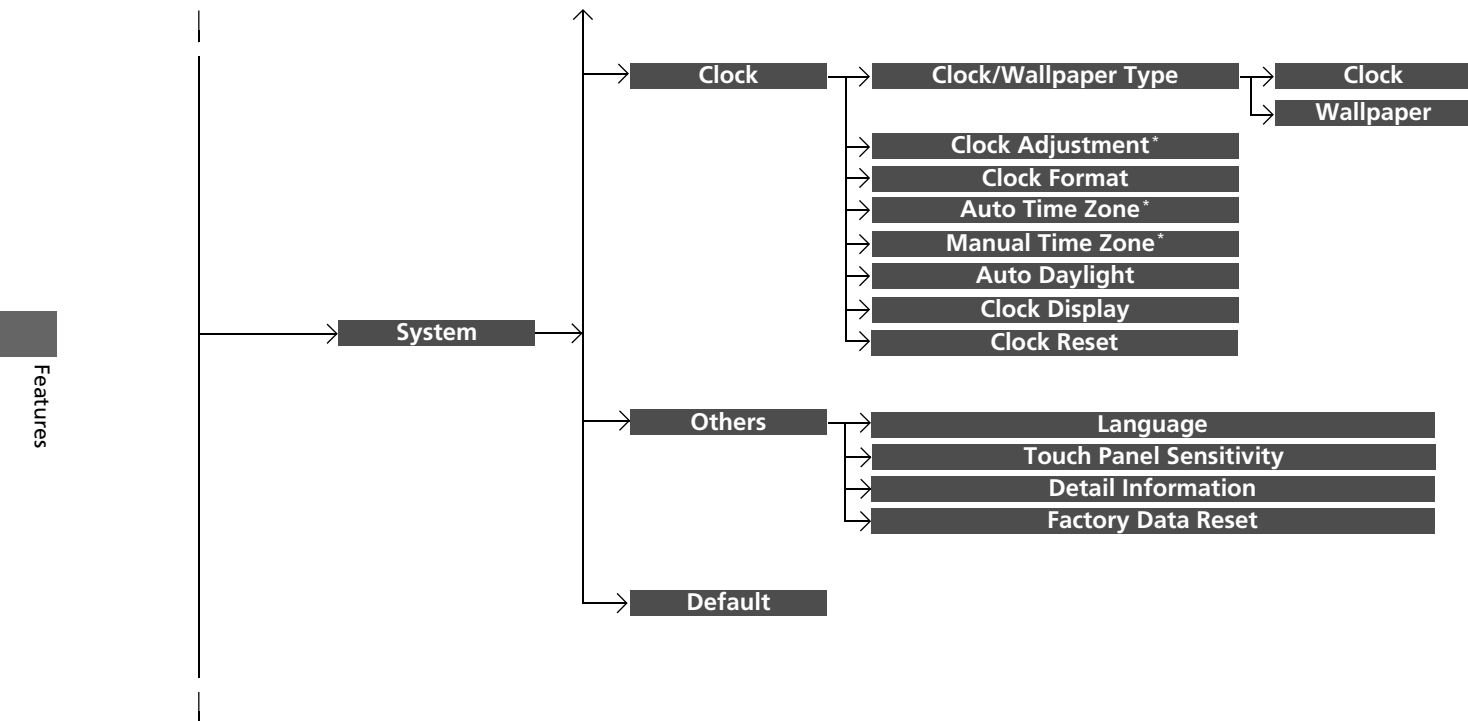
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

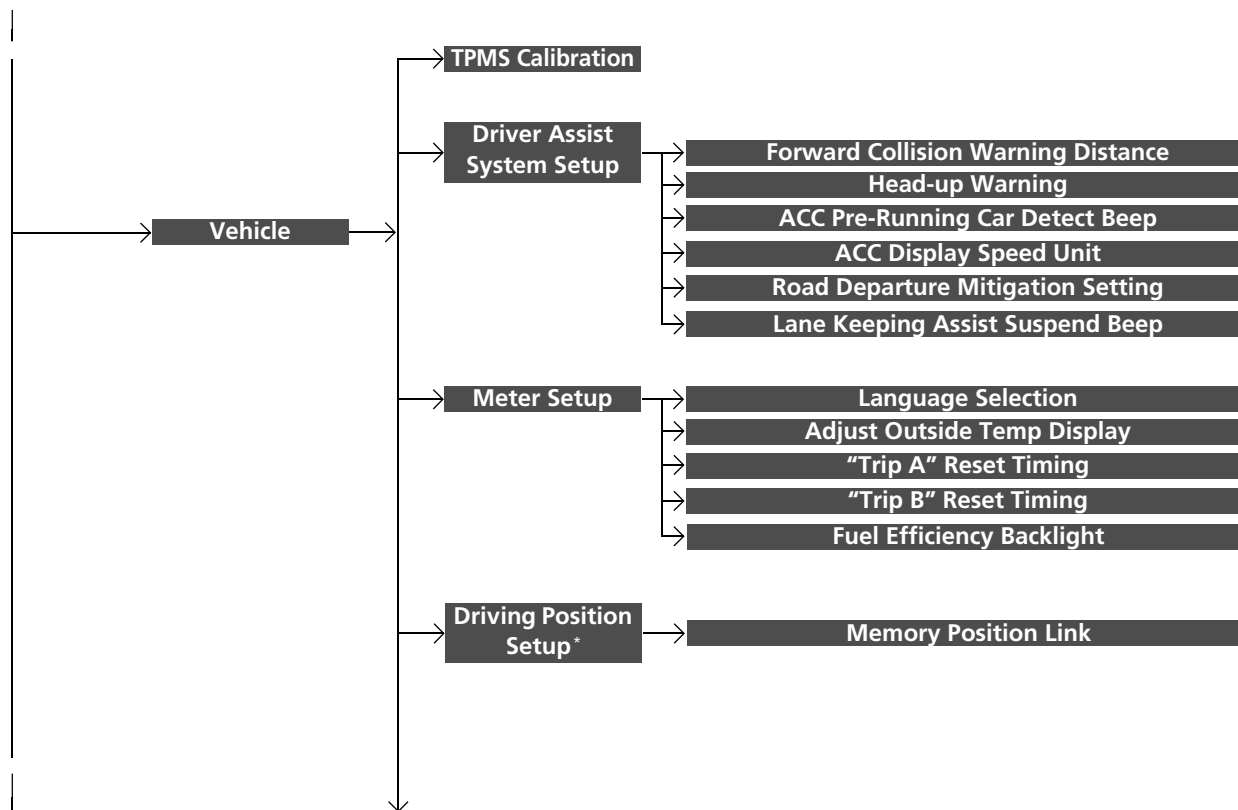
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 323

## ■ Customization flow

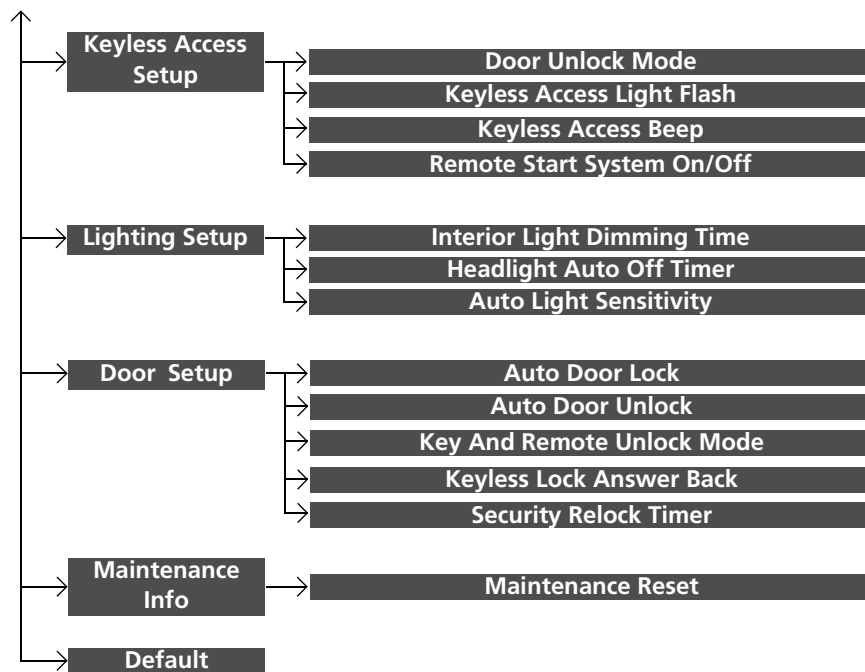


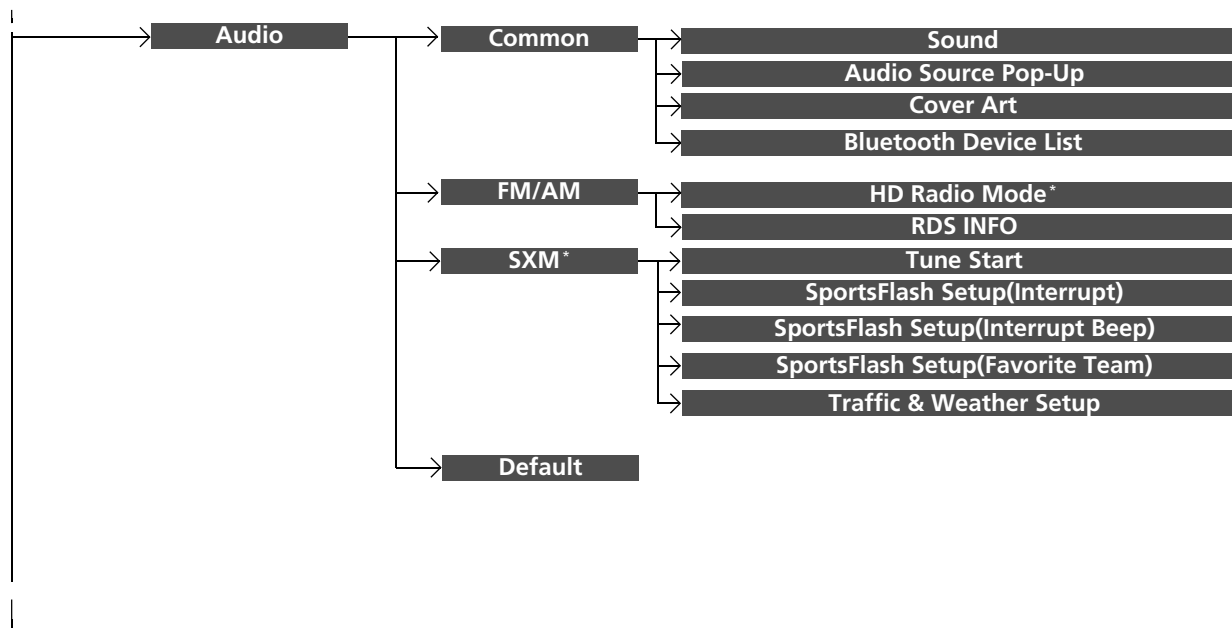
\* Not available on all models

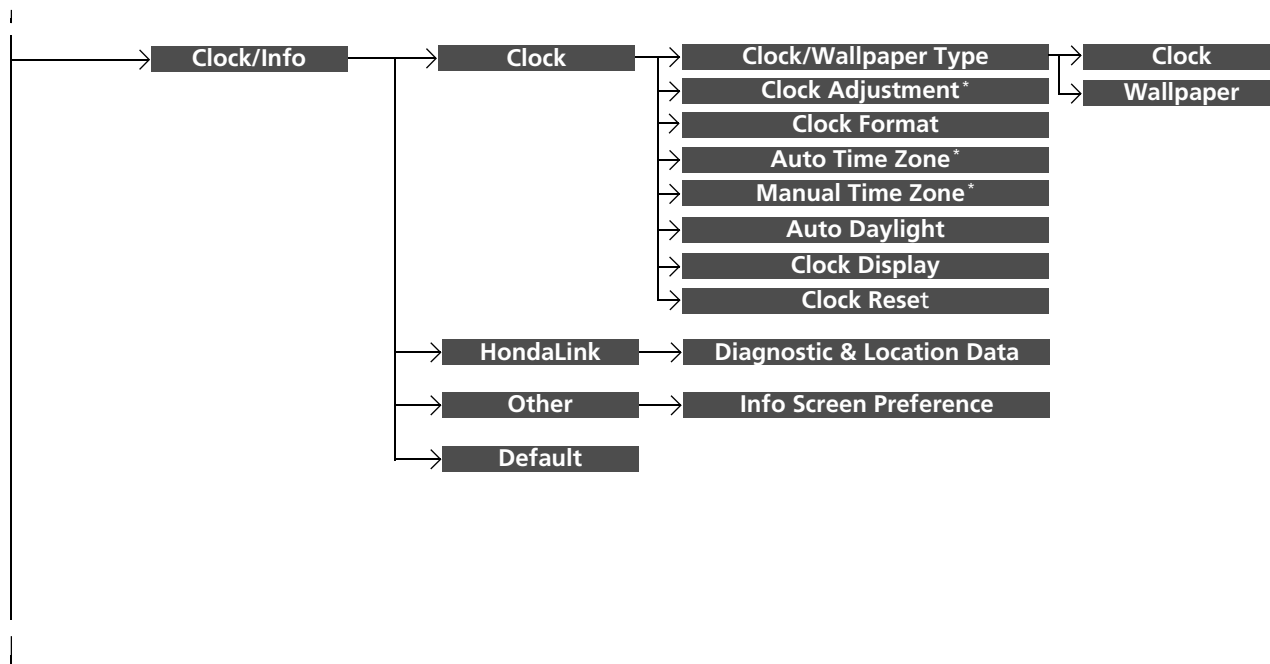


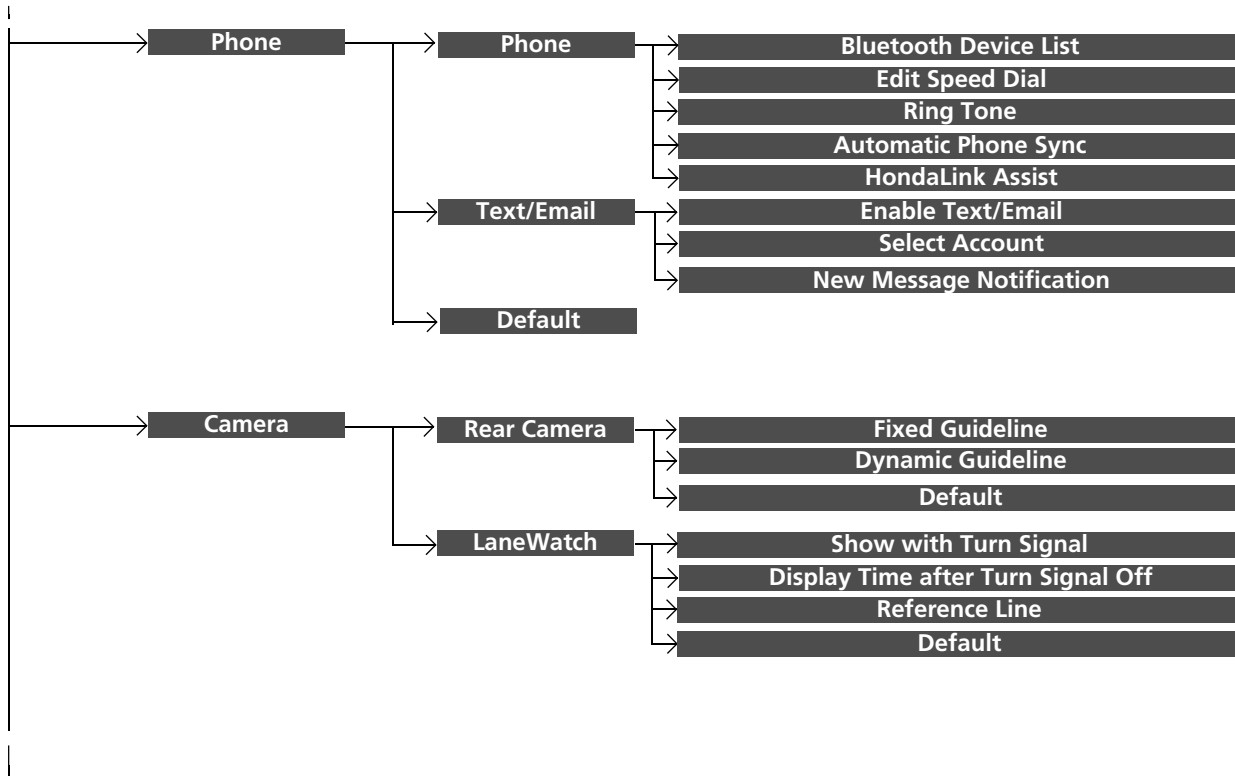


\* Not available on all models

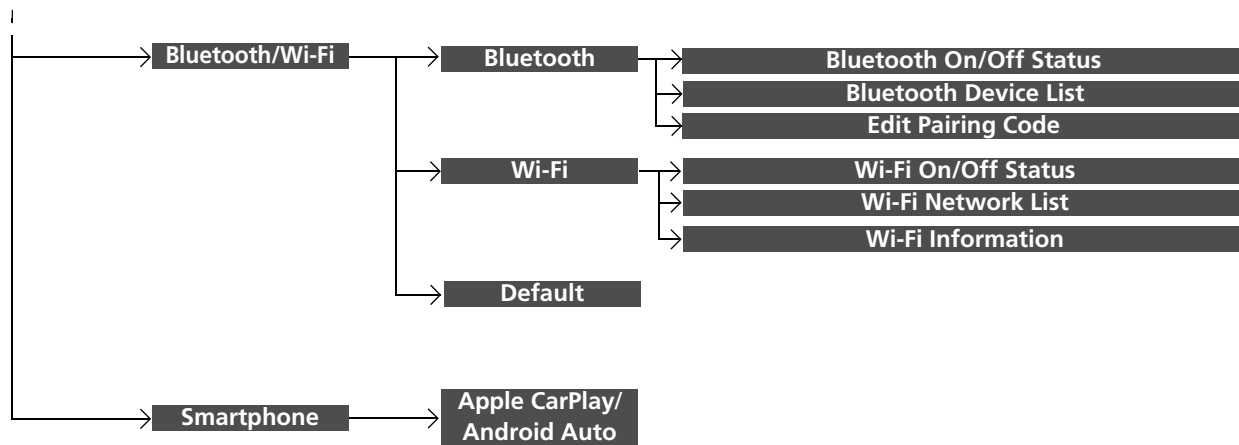














■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information touch screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information touch screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information touch screen.	—
	Background Color		Changes the background color of the audio/information touch screen.	Blue <sup>*1</sup> /Amber/Red/Violet/Blue Green
	Sound/Beep	Guidance Volume	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	1~6 <sup>*1</sup> ~11
		Text Message Volume	Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	1~6 <sup>*1</sup> ~11
		Voice Recog. Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	1~6 <sup>*1</sup> ~11
		Verbal Reminder*	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2 <sup>*1</sup> /3

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Voice Recog	<b>Voice Prompt</b>	Turns the voice prompt on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Voice Recog. Volume</b>	Changes the volume of the voice prompt. <b>1~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Song by Voice<sup>*</sup></b>	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Song by Voice Phonetic Modification<sup>*</sup></b>	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone.  <b>Phonetic Modification</b> P. 257 —
		<b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</b>	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook.  <b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</b> P. 389 —
		<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL. <b>On/Off</b>
		<b>One Press Voice Operation</b>	Changes the setting of the touch screen operation when using the voice operation. <b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Clock	Analog/Digital <sup>*1</sup> / Small Digital/Off
			Wallpaper	Galaxy <sup>*1</sup> /Metallic/ Blank
		Clock Adjustment <sup>*</sup>		—
		Clock Format		12H <sup>*1</sup> /24H
		Auto Time Zone <sup>*</sup>		On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Manual Time Zone <sup>*</sup>		—
		Auto Daylight		On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Clock Display		On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Clock Reset		Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	Language	English <sup>*1</sup> /French/Spanish
		Touch Panel Sensitivity	High/Low <sup>*1</sup>
		Detail Information	—
		Factory Data Reset 🔍 Defaulting All the Settings P. 337	Yes/No
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> settings group as default.	Yes/No

\* 1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Driver Assist System Setup		
	TPMS Calibration	Cancels/Calibrates the TPMS.	Cancel <sup>*1</sup> /Calibrate
	Forward Collision Warning Distance	Changes distance the CMBS™ alerts.	Long/Normal <sup>*1</sup> /Short
	Head-up Warning	Turns the head-up warning lights on to flash or off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	ACC Pre-Running Car Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>
	ACC Display Speed Unit	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display.	mph <sup>*1</sup> /km/h (U.S.) mph/km/h <sup>*1</sup> (Canada)
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Normal <sup>*1</sup> /Wide/Warning Only
	Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Meter Setup	Language Selection	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display.	English <sup>*1</sup> /French/ Spanish
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-5°F ~ ±0°F <sup>*1</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)
		“Trip A” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset <sup>*1</sup>
		“Trip B” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset <sup>*1</sup>
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Driving Position Setup*	Memory Position Link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off. On*/Off
	Keyless Access Setup	Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. Driver Door Only*/All Doors
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors. On*/Off
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors. On*/Off
		Remote Start System On/Off	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. On*/Off
	Lighting Setup	Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. 60 sec/30 sec*/15 sec
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. 60 sec/30 sec/15 sec*/0 sec
		Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. Max/High/Mid*/Low/Min

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Door Setup	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock. <b>With Vehicle Speed*<sup>1</sup>/Shift from P/Off</b>
		<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. <b>All Doors When Driver's Door Opens*<sup>1</sup>/All Doors When Shift to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switching Off/Off</b>
		<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key. <b>Driver Door*<sup>1</sup>/All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. <b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. <b>90 sec/60 sec/30 sec*<sup>1</sup></b>
	Maintenance Info.	<b>Maintenance Reset</b>	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service. —
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Vehicle</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	Common	<b>Sound</b> Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 230	<b>-6 ~ 0*<sup>1</sup> ~ +6 (BASS and TREBLE), RR9~0*<sup>1</sup> ~FR9 (FADER), L9~*<sup>1</sup> 0~R9 (BALANCE), -6 ~ 0*<sup>1</sup> ~ +6 (Subwoofer), Off/Low/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/High (Speed Volume Compensation)</b>
		<b>Audio Source Pop-Up</b> Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the home screen.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<i>iPod or USB mode</i> [Your selected media] <b>Cover Art</b> Turns the cover art display on and off.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Bluetooth Device List</b> Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 380	—
	<i>FM/AM mode</i> <b>FM/AM</b>	<b>HD Radio Mode*</b> Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analogue waves only.	<b>Auto*<sup>1</sup>/Analog</b>
		<b>RDS INFO</b> Turns on and off the RDS information.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	<b>Tune Start</b>	Turns on and off, starts the song from the beginning as you change preset stations.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt)</b>	Turns on and off the sports alert function.	<b>Off<sup>*1</sup>/ On(one time)/ On(continue)</b>
	<b>SiriusXM<sup>®</sup> mode SXM<sup>*</sup></b> <b>SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt Beep)</b>	Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>SportsFlash Setup(Favorite Team)</b>	Selects your favorite sports teams. ▶ <b>Live Sports Alert</b> P. 246	—
	<b>Traffic &amp; Weather Setup</b>	Selects the region you want to receive the information.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\* 1: Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Clock/ Info	Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Clock Wallpaper	
		Clock Adjustment*		
		Clock Format		
		Auto Time Zone*	See <b>System</b> on P. 323	
		Manual Time Zone*		
		Auto Daylight		
		Clock Display		
		Clock Reset		
	HondaLink	Diagnostic & Location Data	Turns HondaLink® on and off.	On/Off
	Other	Info Screen Preference	Changes the information screen type.	Info Menu* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Clock/Info</b> settings group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	Phone	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b> Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➡ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 380	—
		<b>Edit Speed Dial</b> Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 386	—
		<b>Ring Tone</b> Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile Phone</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b> Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	Text/Email	<b>HondaLink Assist</b> Turns HondaLink Assist on and off.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>Enable Text/Email</b> Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>Select Account</b> Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
	Default	<b>New Message Notification</b> Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail messages.	<b>On/Off</b>
		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera	<b>Fixed Guideline</b> Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.  <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> P. 480	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Dynamic Guideline</b> Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.  <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> P. 480	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Default</b> Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Camera</b> setting group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	LaneWatch	<b>Show with Turn Signal</b> Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Display Time after Turn Signal Off</b> Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the center.	<b>0 second<sup>*1</sup>/ 2 seconds</b>
		<b>Reference Line</b> Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Default</b> Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>LaneWatch</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

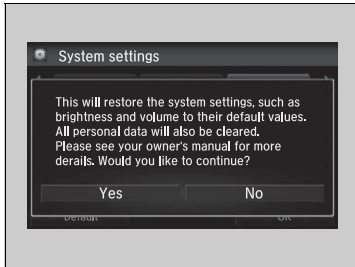
\*1:Default Setting


Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Wi-Fi	Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status	Selects to change the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➤ Phone Setup P. 380	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. ➤ To change the pairing code setting P. 381	Random/Fixed* <sup>1</sup>
	Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi On/Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		Wi-Fi Network List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the device.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth/Wi-Fi</b> group as default.		Yes/No
Smartphone	Apple CarPlay/Android Auto		Sets up the Apple CarPlay®/Android Auto™ connection.	Enable Once/ Always Enable/ Cancel

\*1:Default Setting

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - After selecting **Yes**, the system will reboot.

### » Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use HondaLink® because it becomes off line.

📄 **HondaLink®** P. 267



The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

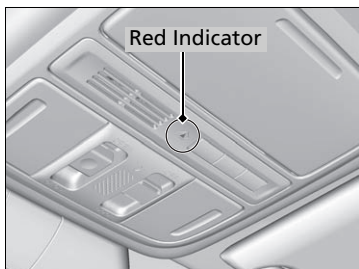
## ■ Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

## Training HomeLink



If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

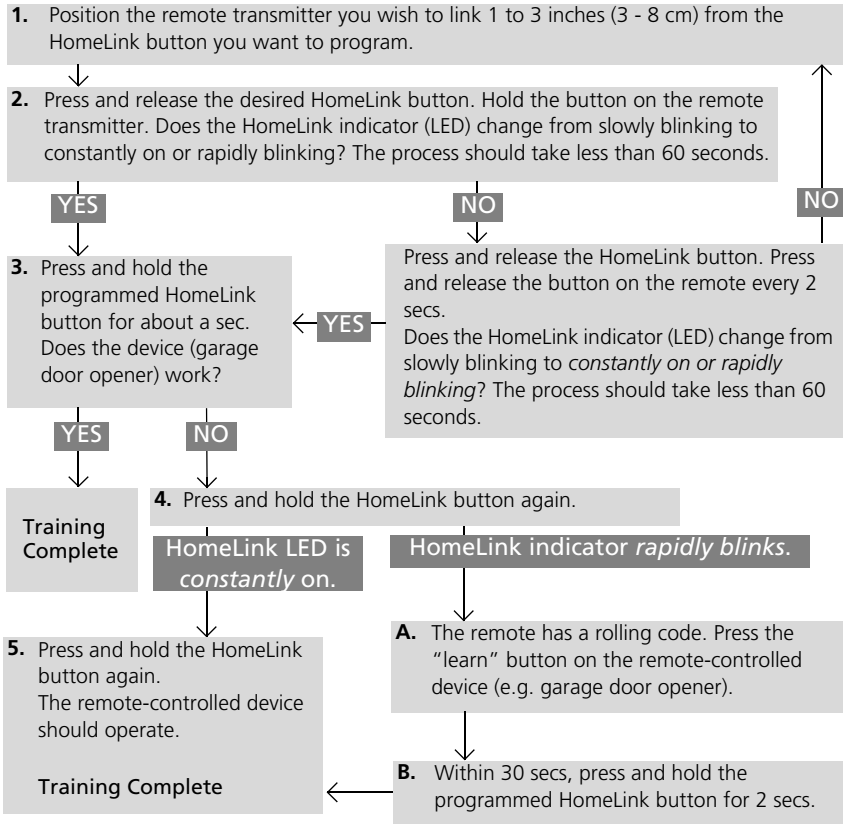
- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit <http://www.homelink.com> or call (800) 355-3515.

### ⌘ HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\*

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

## Training a Button



## Training HomeLink

### Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

**Standard transmitter**  
Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

**Rolling code transmitter**  
Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button." You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

### Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

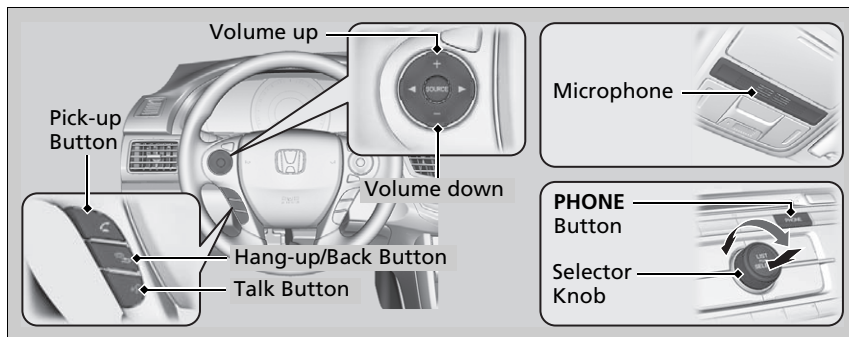
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.






## Models with one display

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons




-  **(Pick-up) button:** Press to answer an incoming call.
-  **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.
-  **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number.
- PHONE button:** Press to go directly to the Phone screen.
- Selector knob:** Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®


To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth On/Off** setting must be **On**.

 **Customized Features** P. 295

Voice control tips

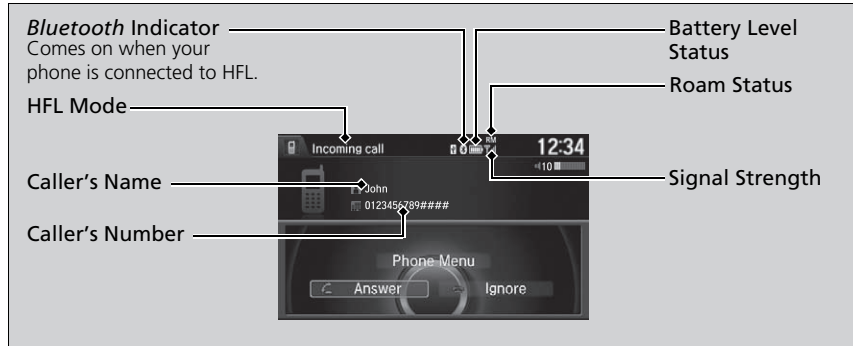
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

## HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## Limitations for Manual Operation



Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 358

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

## HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 295

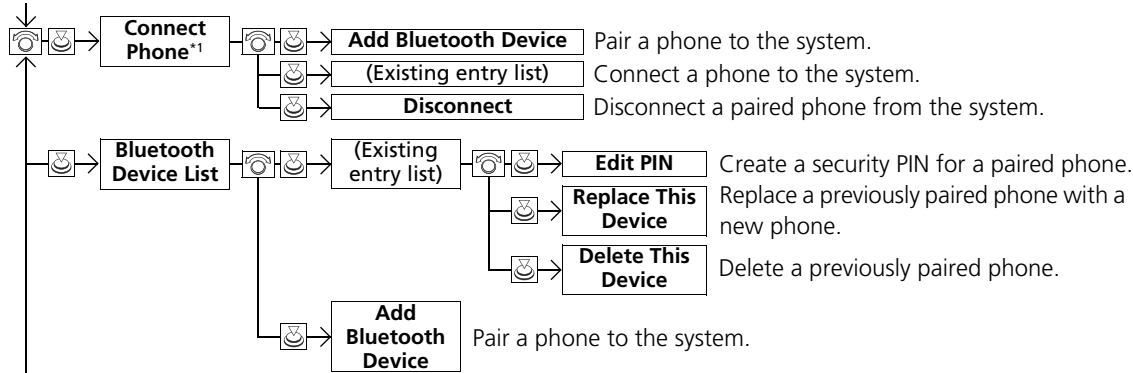
# HFL Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFL.

## Phone Settings screen



- 1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- 2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .

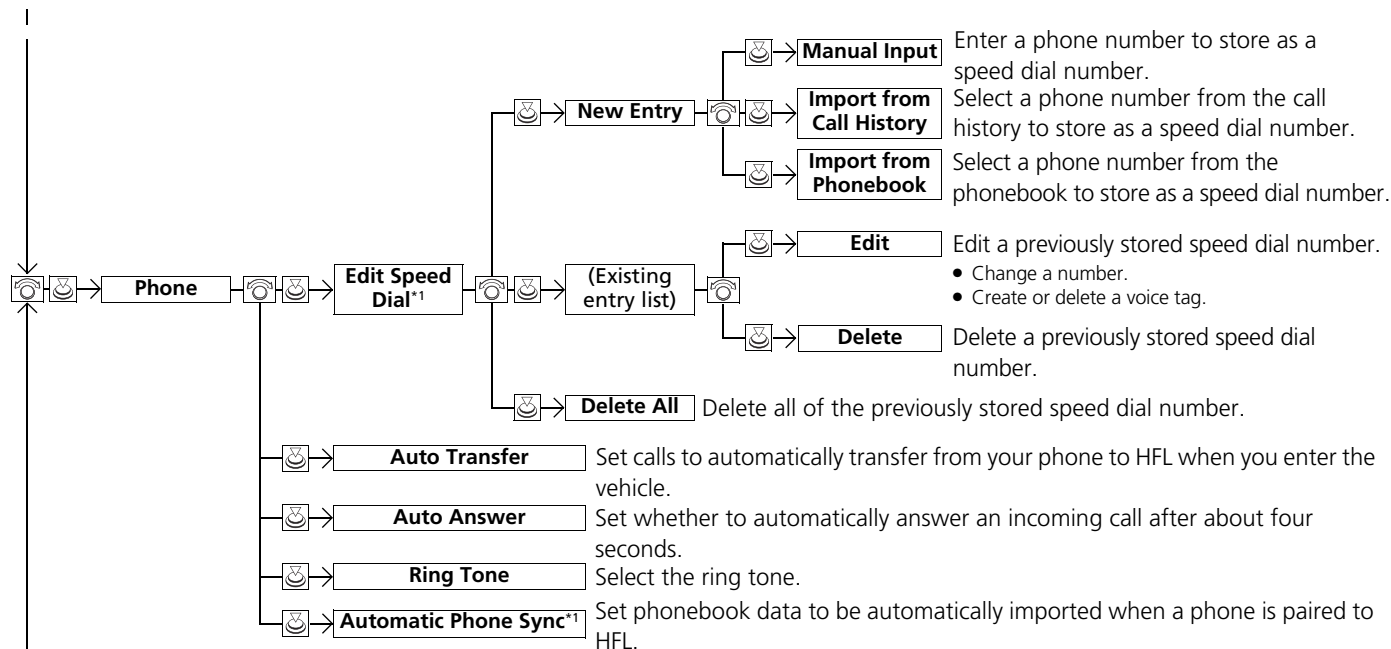


\*1: Appears when a phone has already been paired to HFL.

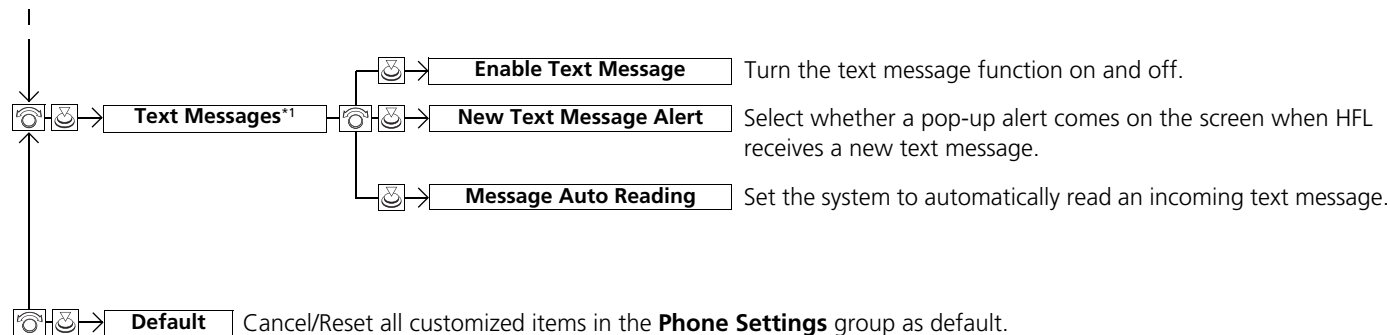
HFL Menu

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

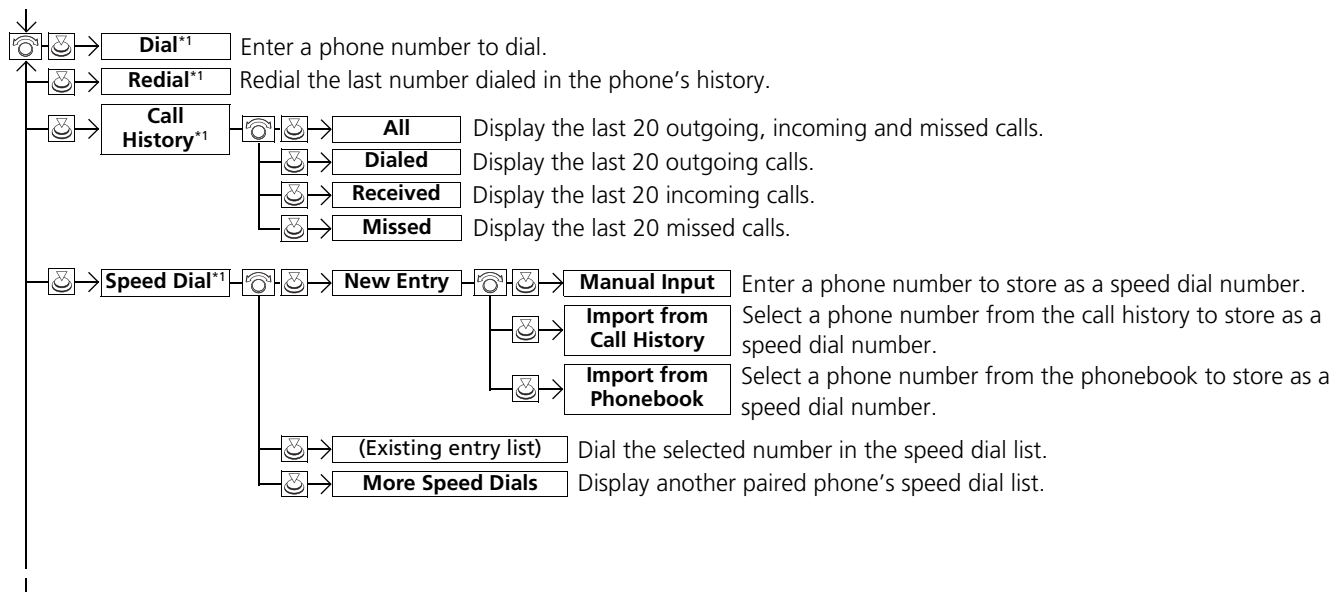


\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

## ■ Phone screen



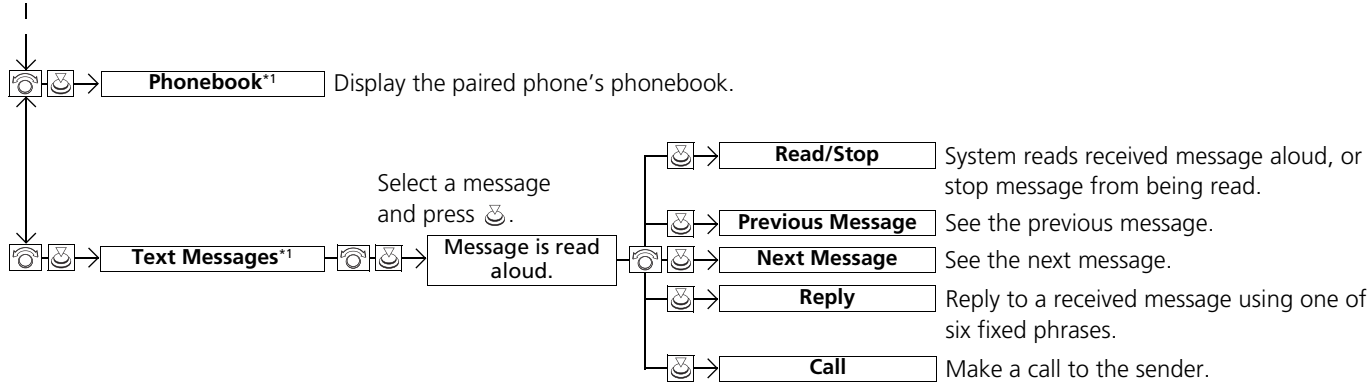
1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to display the menu items.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

Continued





\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

## ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

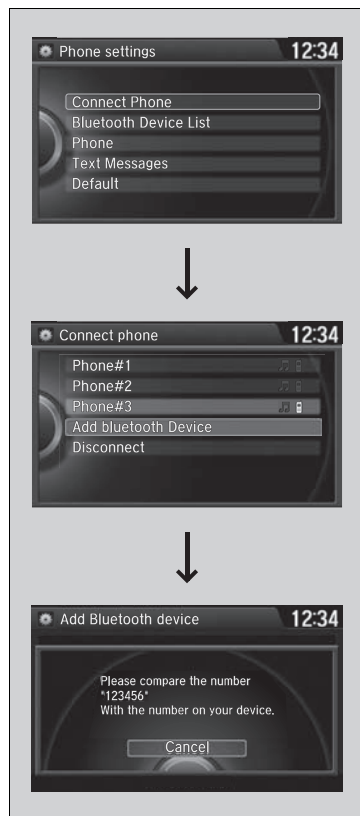
These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFL.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pairing is completed, an **Automatic Phone Sync** prompt appears. Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

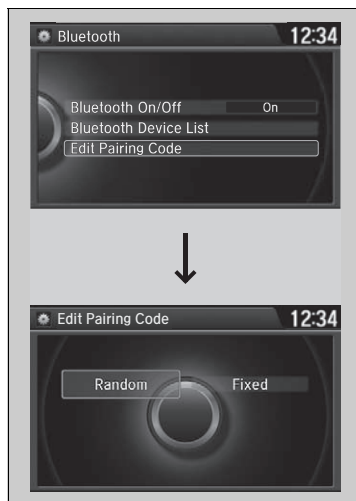
### ➤ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting P. 357

Continued



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Connect Phone**, then press .
  - Repeat the procedure to select **Add Bluetooth Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth**, then **Edit Pairing Code**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press .

### ☒ To change the pairing code setting

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

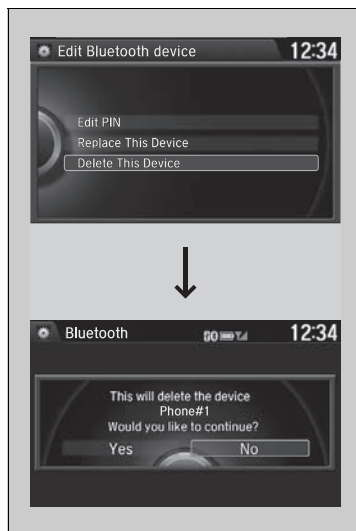


### ■ To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a paired phone you want to replace, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Replace This Device**, then press .
5. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone.  
 ► Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

### ►► To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

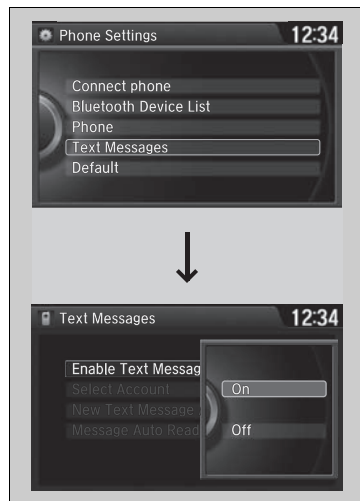
The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, call history, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.



### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete This Device**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if it is successful.

## ■ To Set Up Text Message Options







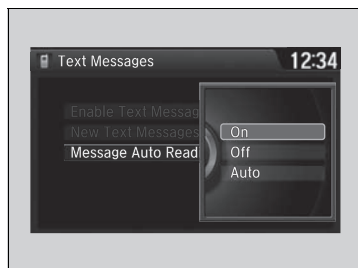
### ■ To turn on or off the text message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Text Messages**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Enable Text Message**.  
 ► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .







### ■ To turn on or off the text message notice

1. On the **Text Messages** screen, rotate  to select **New Text Message Alert**, then press .
2. Rotate  to select **On** or **Off**, then press .



### ■ To set up the auto reading option

1. On the **Text Messages** screen, rotate  to select **Message Auto Reading**, then press .  
► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Rotate  to select **On**, **Off** or **Auto** then press .

#### ►► To turn on or off the text message notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

#### ►► To set up the auto reading option

**On:** A text message is always read aloud.

**Off:** A text message is not read aloud.

**Auto:** A text message is read aloud only when driving.



## ■ To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.



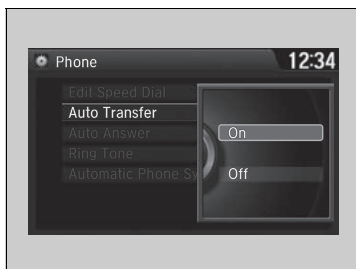
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Edit PIN**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.  
► Rotate to select, then press .  
Press to delete. Press **OK** to enter the security PIN.
6. Re-enter the four-digit number.  
► The screen returns to the screen in step 4.





## ►► To Create a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.

## Automatic Transferring

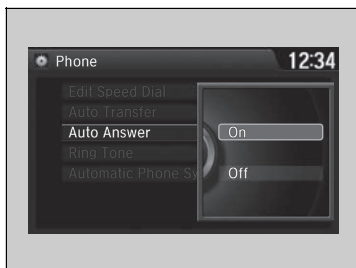
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.







1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ➤ **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate  to select **Phone**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Transfer**.
3. Rotate  to select **On**, then press .

## Auto Answer

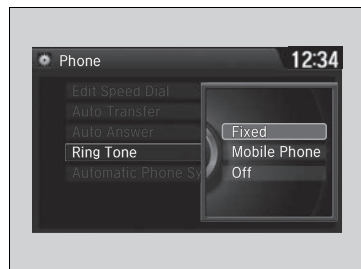
You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ➤ **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate  to select **Phone**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Answer**.
3. Rotate  to select **On**, then press .

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Ring Tone**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed**, **Mobile Phone** or **Off**, then press .

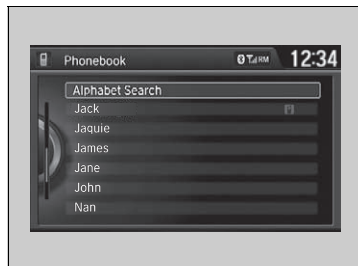
## » Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

**Mobile Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

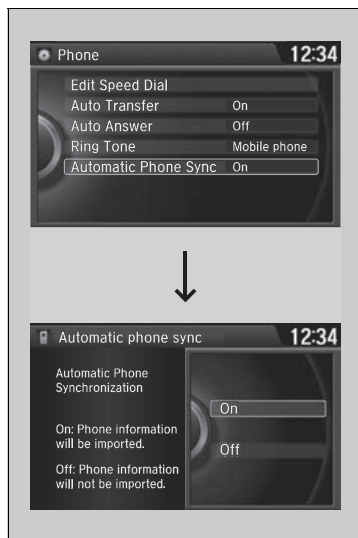
**Off:** No ring tones sound from the speaker.

## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

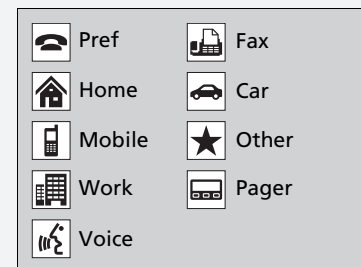


### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### ⌘ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 378

2. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .

▶ Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.

3. Rotate  to select a place to choose a number from, then press .

From **Import from Call History**:




▶ Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:


▶ Input the number manually.

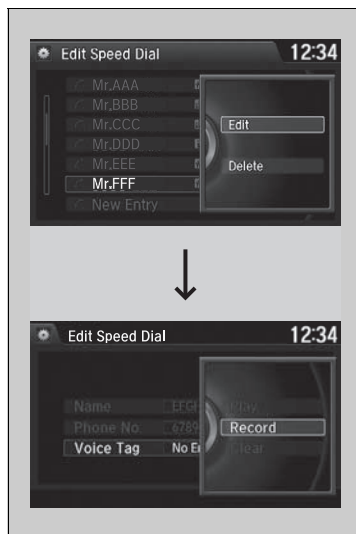
From **Import from Phonebook**:

▶ Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.

4. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate  to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
5. Using the  button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

## ▶▶ Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.



## ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

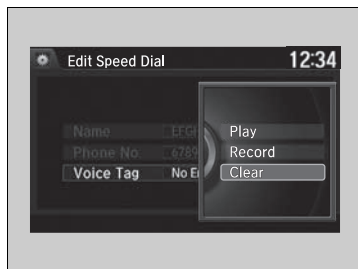
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .  
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .  
▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Record**, then press .
5. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## ⌘ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.

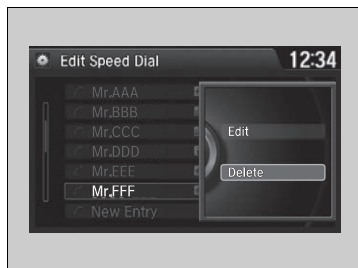
Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.

It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”



### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .  
 ► From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Clear**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



### ■ To delete a speed dial


1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone Settings screen** P. 342
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .  
 ► Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
4. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### » Making a Call

Voice-tagged speed dial entries, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the  button and say "Call" and the phonebook name, phone number, or stored voice tag.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.





## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone** menu screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a name, then press .  
 ► You can also search by letter. Rotate to select **Alphabet Search**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

## ►► To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 341
- **Speed Dial** P. 358



## ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ➤ **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



## ■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ➤ **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

## ► To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 341
- **Speed Dial** P. 358



### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
  2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**, then press .
  4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
  2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

### ► To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)

### ► To make a call using a speed dial entry

Select **More Speed Dials** to view another paired phone's speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

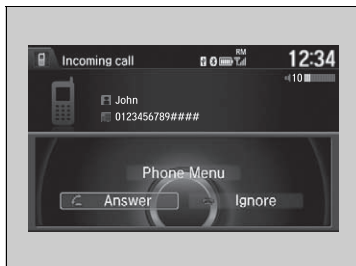
When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.

► **Speed Dial** P. 358



Voice-tagged speed dial entries, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the button and follow the prompts.

To call stored speed dial entries 1-6, press the corresponding preset buttons from the **Phone** screen.

## Receiving a Call





When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.


## Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

## ■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



Pres the **MENU** button to display the options. Rotate  to select the mute option, then press .

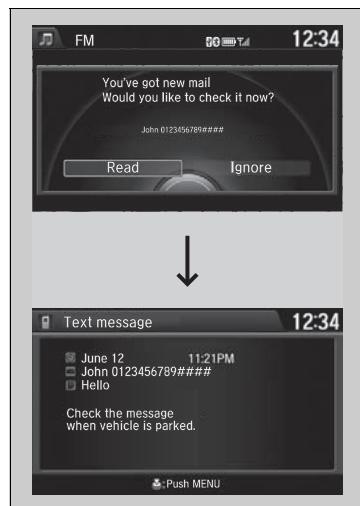
- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.




## ►► Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

## Receiving a Text Message

HFL can display newly received text messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message.
2. Rotate  to select **Read** to listen to the message, then press .
  - ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press .

## Receiving a Text Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message feature. Only use the text message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text message for the first time after the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Text Message Alert** setting to **On**.

▶ **To turn on or off the text message notice**  
P. 353



## ■ Displaying Text Messages



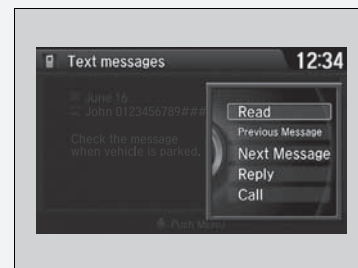
1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Text Messages**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a message, then press .
  - The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

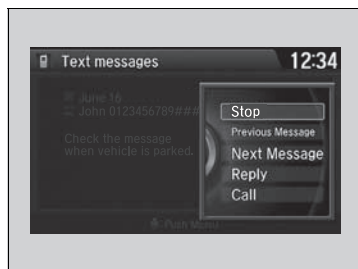
## ►► Displaying Text Messages

The icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message will also be deleted from the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, press on the text message screen. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Previous Message** or **Next Message**, then press .





## ■ Using the Stop or Read option

1. Go to the text message screen.  
► The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
    ❏ **Displaying Text Messages** P. 368
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Stop** or **Read**, then press .

## ■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text message screen.  
► The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
    ❏ **Displaying Text Messages** P. 368
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Reply**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the reply message, then press .
5. Select **Send** to send the message.  
► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.  
► **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

## ►► Using the Stop or Read option

This option changes to:

- **Stop** while the text message is read out. Select this option to discontinue the message read out.
- **Read** when the system has finished reading out the text message, or after you selected **Stop**. Select this option to hear the system read out the selected message.

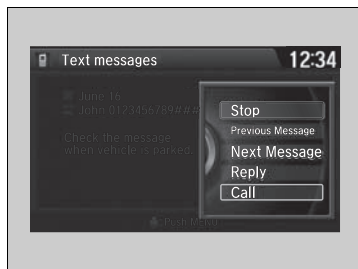
## ►► Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:


- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**




You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.





## ■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
- 

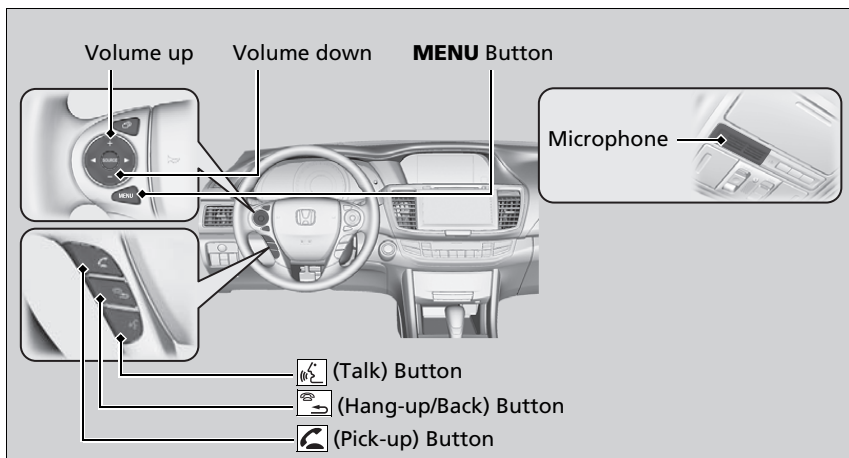
**Displaying Text Messages** P. 368
2. Press  to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate  to select **Call**, then press .

## Models with two displays

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons



### Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®


To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto™, HFL is unavailable.

➤ **How to customize** P. 314


#### Voice control tips


- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 386

Up to five call histories can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

**MENU button:** Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the phone screen.

To go to the **Phone menu** screen:

1. Select .
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Select .

## ►► *Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink®

### *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFL Limitations

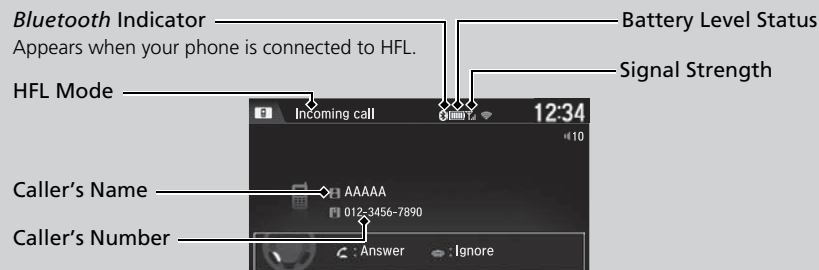
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

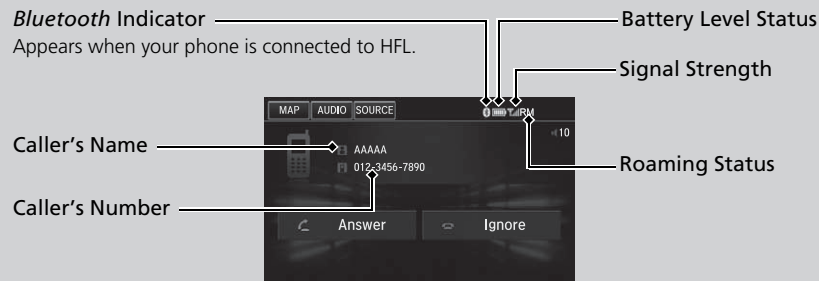
## HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen notify you when there is an incoming call.

### Audio/information screen



### Audio/information touch screen



### HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

► **How to customize** P. 314

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

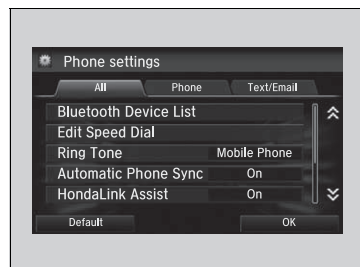
Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 386

## HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

### ■ Phone settings screen

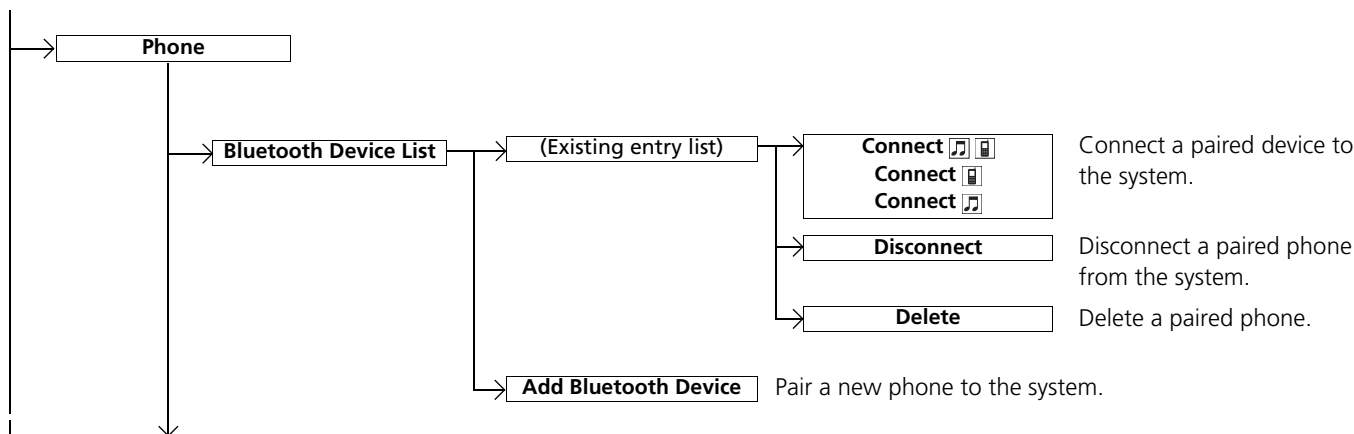


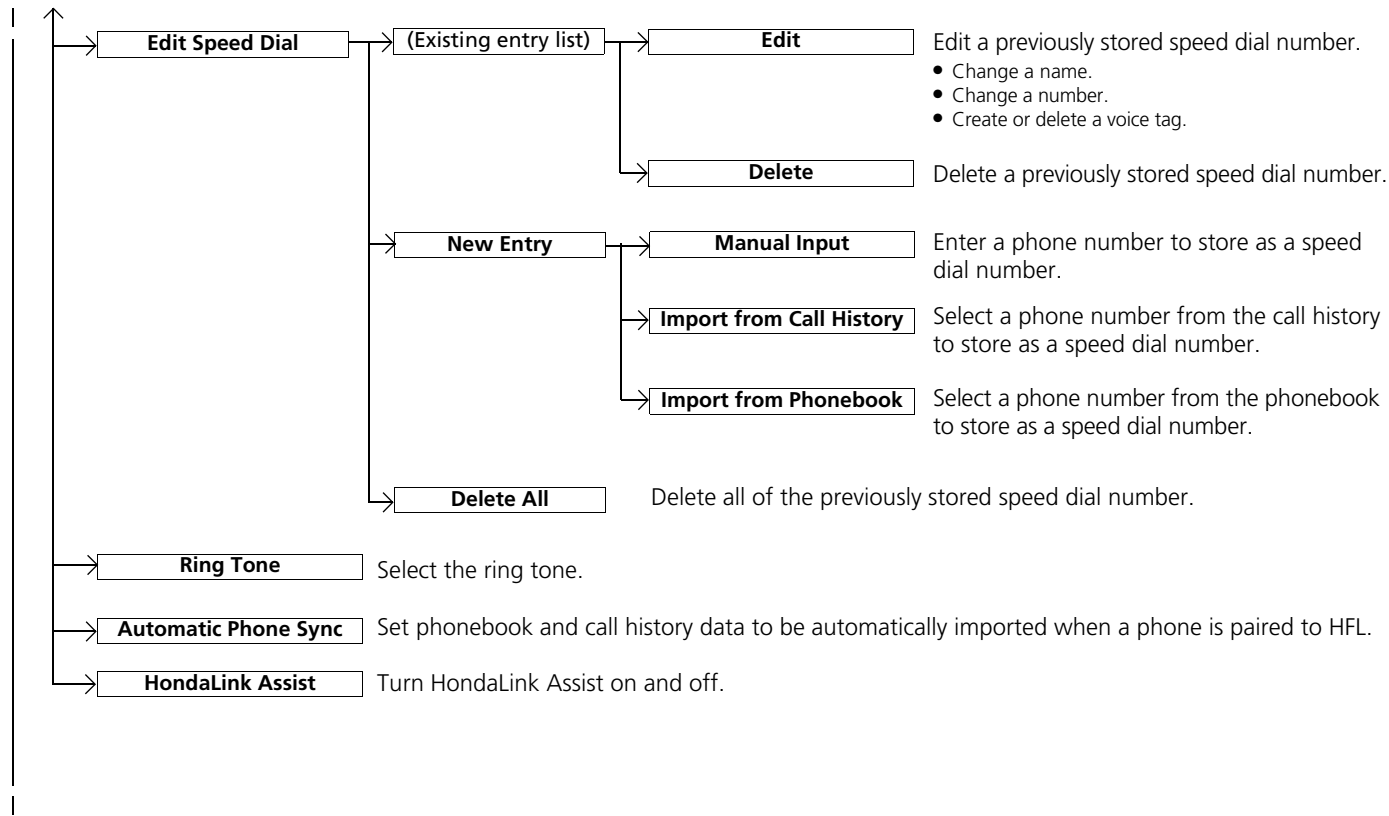
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

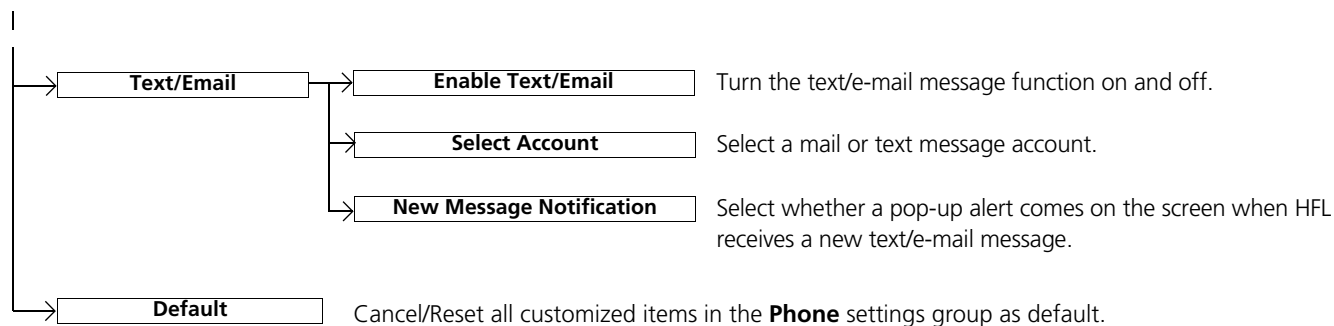
### ▶▶ HFL Menu

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

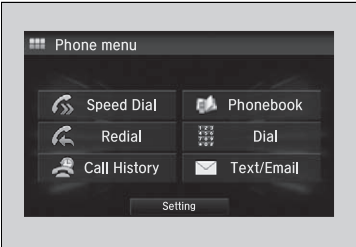






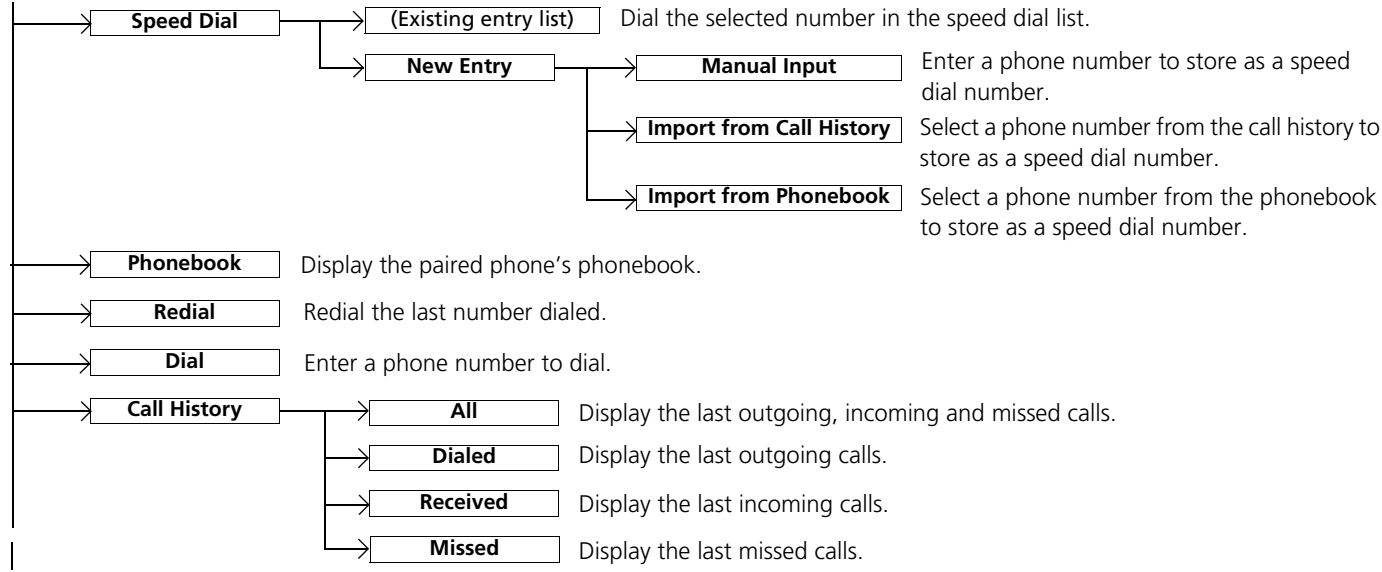


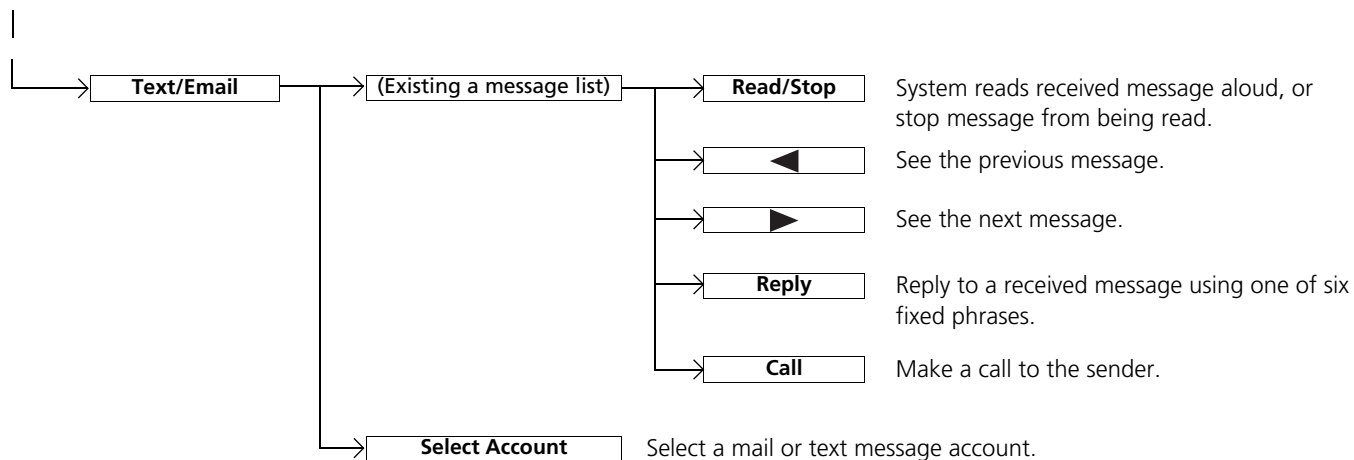
■ Phone menu screen



- 1. Select .
- 2. Select **Phone**.
- 3. Select .

Features





## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
  - HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth®* device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth®* devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **HandsFreeLink**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information touch screen.
  - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

## Phone Setup



Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

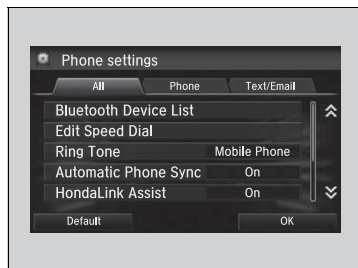
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.




These icons indicate the following:

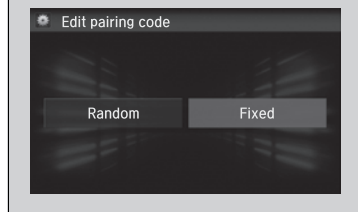
- : The phone can be used with HFL.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth®* Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay®, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.




## ■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.  
 ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** , **Connect** , or **Connect** .



## ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

## ☒ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

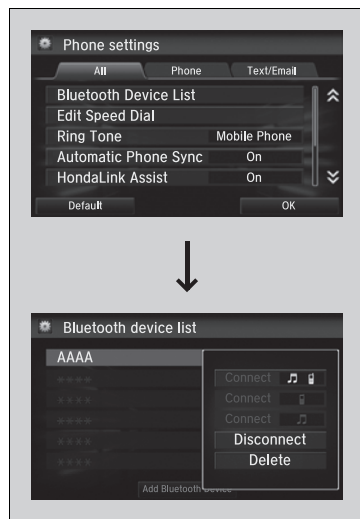
To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth device list** screen.

## ☒ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

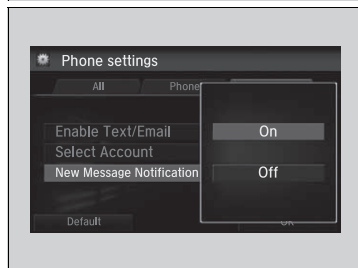
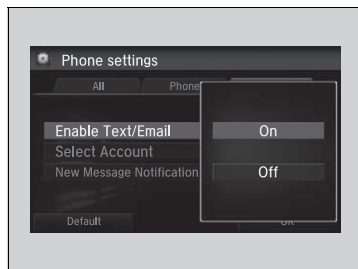
For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ■ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options



### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail function

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ☒ To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options

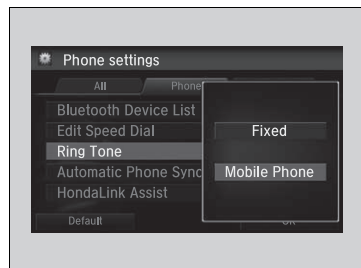
To use the text message/e-mail function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

## ☒ To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.  
**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



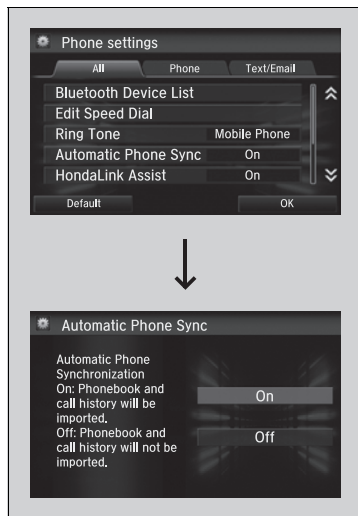
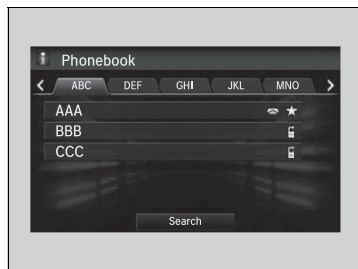
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
    ➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

## » Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Mobile Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

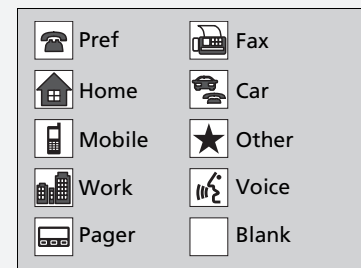
### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.

3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ⌘ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



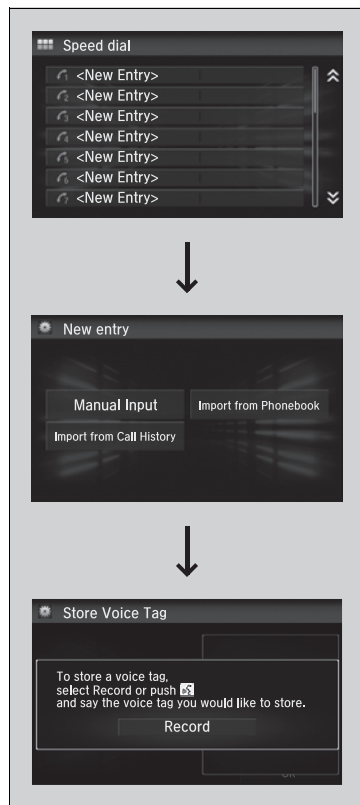
On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.



## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

► **Phone menu screen** P. 378

2. Select **Speed Dial**.

3. Select **New Entry**.

From **Import from Call History**:

► Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:

► Input the number manually.

From **Import from Phonebook**:

► Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.

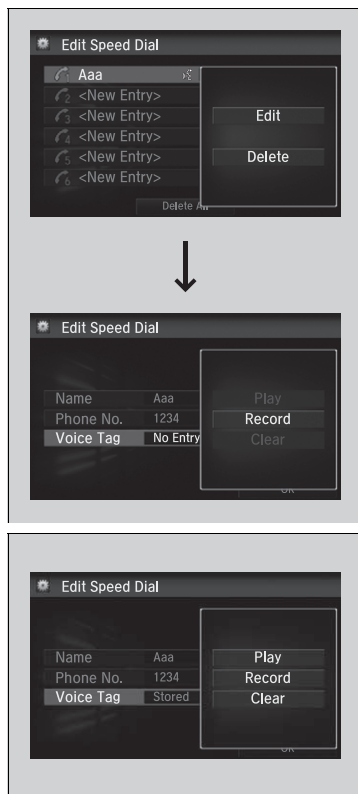
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.

5. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.


► Using the [voice tag icon] button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

## Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [voice tag icon] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



### ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

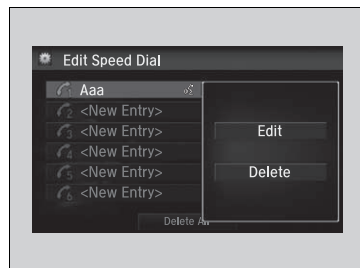
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### ▶▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.  
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To edit a speed dial

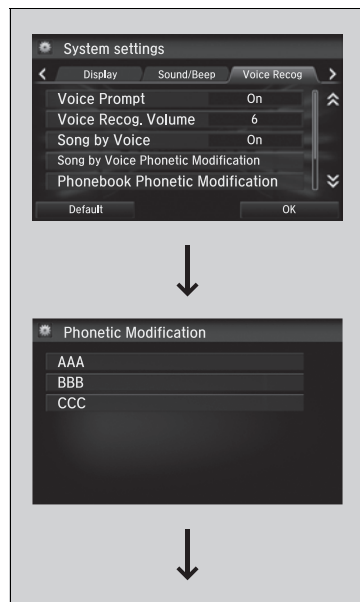
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial


1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.

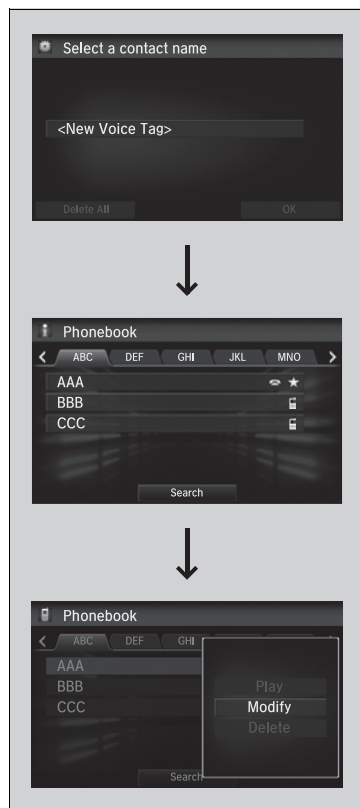


### ■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

### ☒ Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.




7. Select **New Voice Tag**.

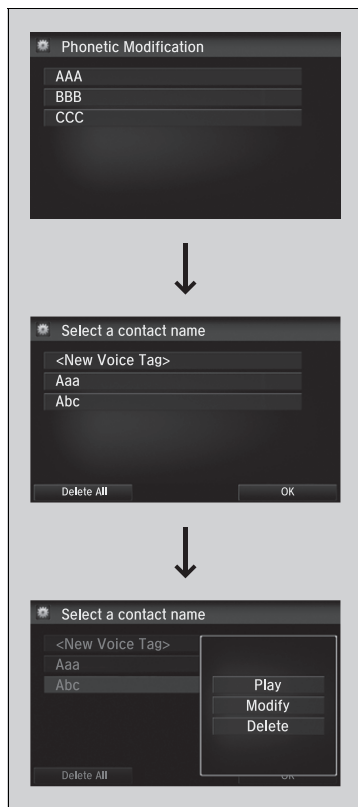
8. Select a contact name you want to add to.

► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



9. Select **Modify**.

10. Using **Record** or the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.



## ■ To modify a voice tag


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

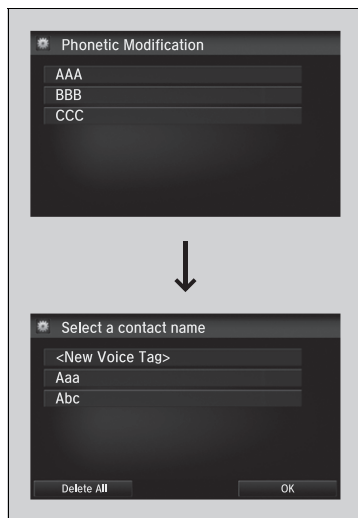
## ▶▶ Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.




### ■ To delete a modified voice tag

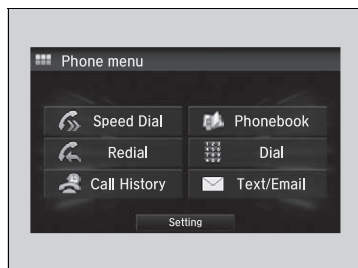
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
  - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Delete**.
  - The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.



### ■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
  - The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.


## ■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### ►► Making a Call

Voice-tagged speed dial entries can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay®, phone calls cannot be made with Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay®.



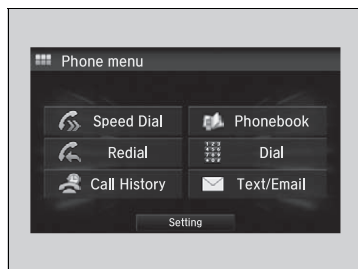


### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.  
 ► You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.  
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

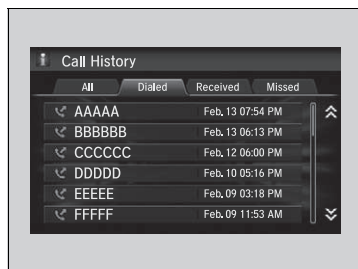
### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Dial**.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using redial

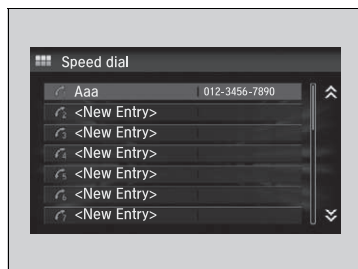
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Redial**.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ☒ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed.

### ☒ To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.  
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

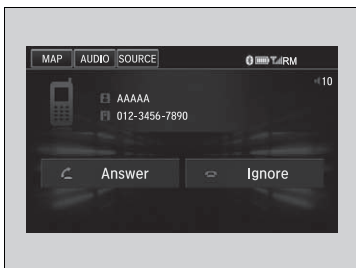
### ☒ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.


▶ **Speed Dial** P. 386


Voice-tagged speed dial entries can be dialed by voice from any screen.  
 Press the button and follow the prompts.

## Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the incoming call screen appears.


Press the  button to answer the call.

Press the  button to decline or end the call.


## Receiving a Call



### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information touch screen instead of the  and  buttons.

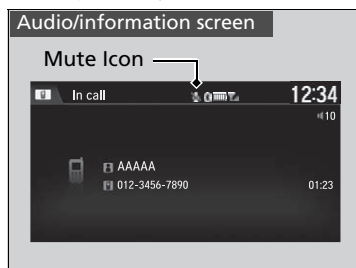
## Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the audio/information touch screen.

Select the option.

- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information touch screen.

## ■ Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

HFL can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or e-mail.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
  - The text message or e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

## ► Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

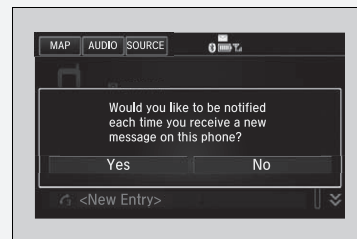
The system can only receive messages that are sent a text (SMS) messages. The message sent using the data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages and e-mails.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message/e-mail feature. Only use the text message/e-mail feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

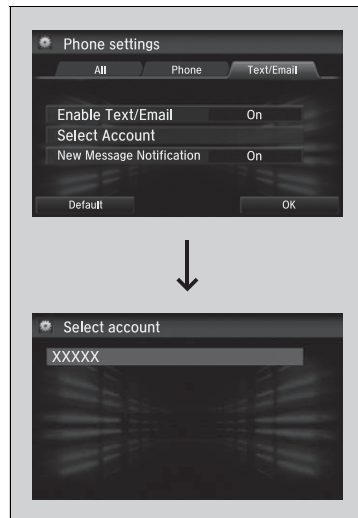
When you receive a text message or e-mail for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

► **To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice**  
P. 383



## Selecting a Mail Account

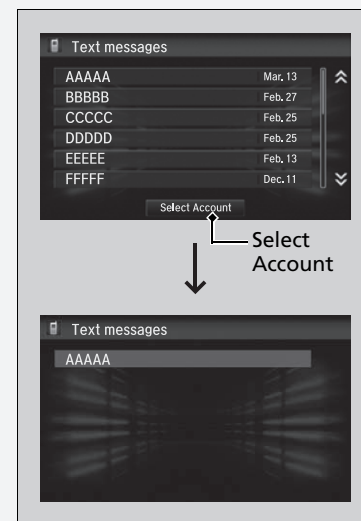
If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Message** or an e-mail account you want.

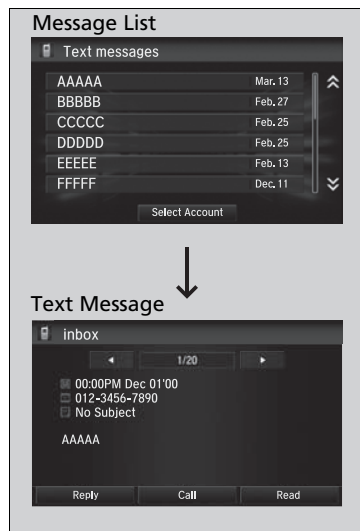
## Selecting a Mail Account

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.

## ■ Displaying Messages





### ■ Displaying text messages

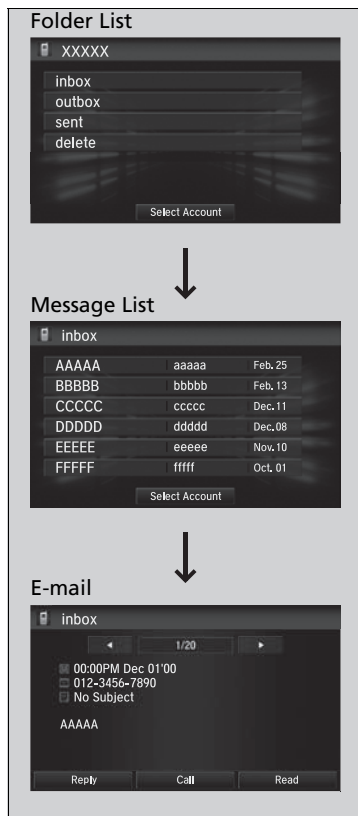
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
 ► Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.  
 ► The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

### » Displaying Messages

The  icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message will also be deleted from the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

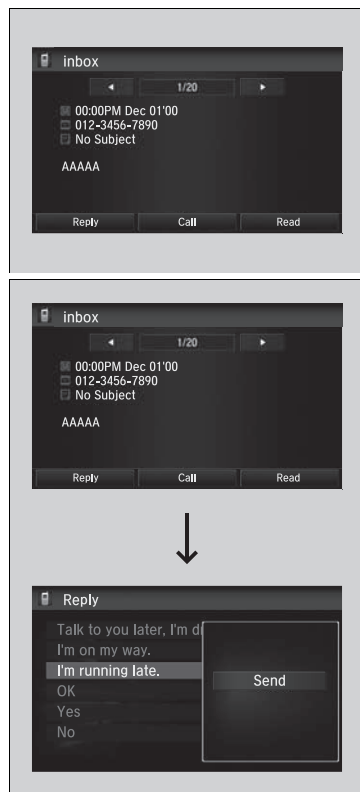
To see the previous or next message, select  or  on the message screen.



## ■ Displaying e-mails

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 378
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
 ► Select **Select Account** if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
4. Select a message.  
 ► The e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.





## ■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
  - ❏ **Displaying Messages** P. 400
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
  - Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.

## ■ Reply to a message

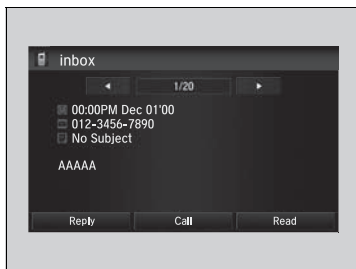
1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
  - ❏ **Displaying Messages** P. 400
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
  - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
  - **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

## ❏ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

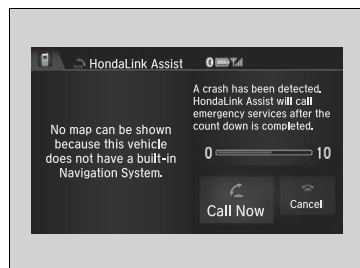


### ■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Call**.

## ■ In Case of Emergency

### ■ Automatic collision notification



If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition will be sent to the operator; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

**IMPORTANT:** For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at [www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions](http://www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions). In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER Honda-PRO NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

## ▶▶ In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use this emergency services when:

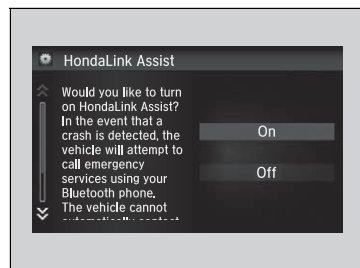
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

## ▶▶ Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

## ■ To enable notification



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ▶▶ To enable notification

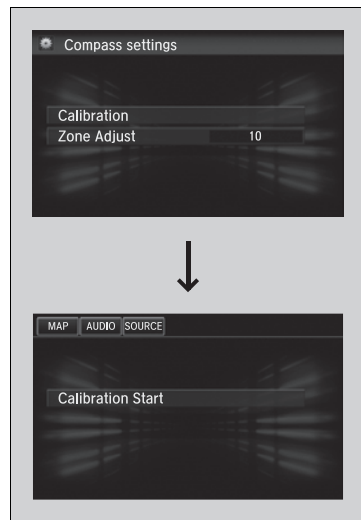
Setting options:


- **On:** Notification is available.
- **Off:** Disable the feature.

When you set the power mode to ON, the compass self-calibrates, and the compass display appears.

## Compass Calibration

If the compass indicates the wrong direction, or the **CAL** indicator blinks, you need to manually calibrate the system.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold  for five seconds.
  - ▶ The display switches to the **Compass settings** screen.
3. Select **Calibration**.
4. Select **Calibration Start**.
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two circles.
  - ▶ The compass starts to show a direction after the calibration. The **CAL** indicator goes off.


### Compass\*

Compass operation can be affected under the following conditions:

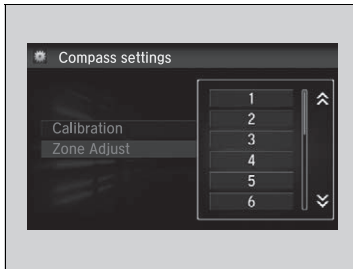
- Driving near power lines or stations
- Crossing a bridge
- Passing a large vehicle, or driving near a large object that can cause a magnetic disturbance
- When accessories such as antennas and roof racks are mounted by magnets


### Compass Calibration

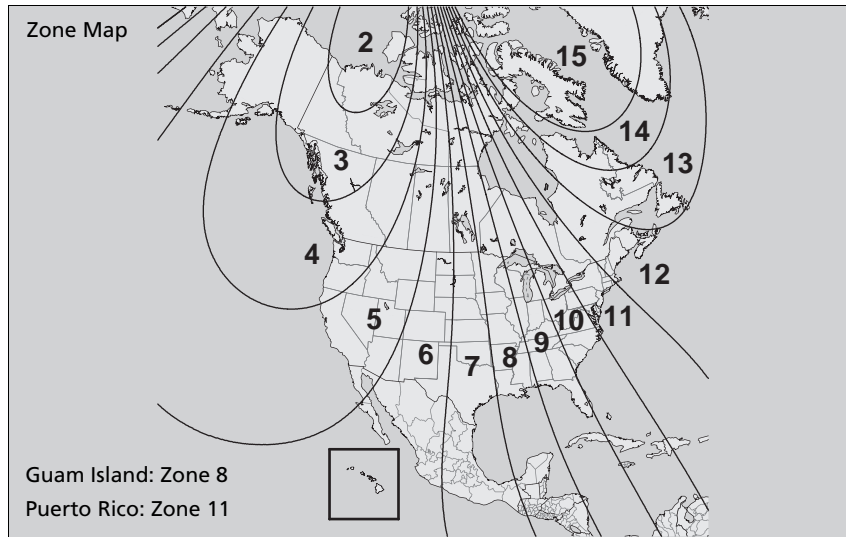
Calibrate the compass in an open area.

While setting the compass, select  to cancel the setting mode and return to the previous screen.

## Compass Zone Selection



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold  for five seconds.
  - ▶ The display switches to the **Compass settings** screen.
3. Select **Zone Adjust**.
  - ▶ The display shows the current zone number the system is set to.
4. Select the zone number of your area (See Zone Map).



### Compass Zone Selection

The zone selection is done to compensate the variation between magnetic north and true north.

If the calibration starts while the audio system is in use, the display returns to normal after the calibration is completed.





# Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

## Before Driving

Driving Preparation .....	410
Maximum Load Limit.....	413

## Towing a Trailer

Towing Your Vehicle .....	415
---------------------------	-----

## When Driving

Turning on the Power .....	416
Precautions While Driving.....	421
Transmission .....	421
Shifting .....	422
ECON Button .....	424
SPORT Mode.....	425
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	426
Front Sensor Camera .....	427

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	429
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System .....	443
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)....	447
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System .....	454
LaneWatch™ .....	456
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)...	458
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation .....	460
High Voltage Battery.....	462

## Braking

Brake System .....	463
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	465

Brake Assist System .....	466
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) .....	467

## Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped .....	475
Parking Sensor System * .....	476

## Multi-View Rear Camera .....

## Refueling

Fuel Information .....	482
How to Refuel .....	483

## Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions


Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	484
---	-----



## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressure, check for damage and excessive wear.
-  **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 516
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
    - ✎ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 413
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the trunk.
  - ✎ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 126
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 160
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 163
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 158
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 157

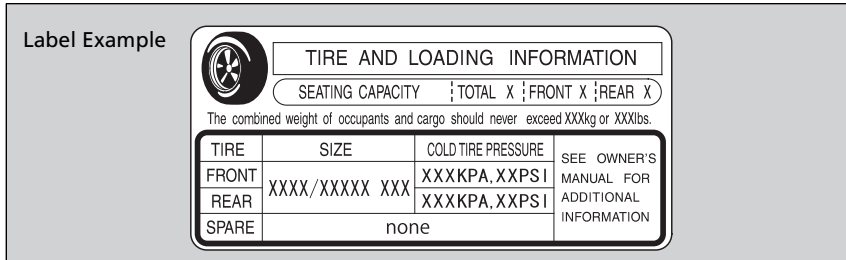
## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📌 **Indicators** P. 74

## Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

- (1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

### Maximum Load Limit

## ⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories and all cargo.

► Specifications P. 564

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

► Specifications P. 564

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

#### Load Limits Example

##### Example1



Max Load  
850 lbs  
(385 kg)



Passenger Weight  
150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs  
(68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)



Cargo Weight  
550 lbs  
(249 kg)

##### Example2



Max Load  
850 lbs  
(385 kg)



Passenger Weight  
150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs  
(68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)



Cargo Weight  
100 lbs  
(45 kg)

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

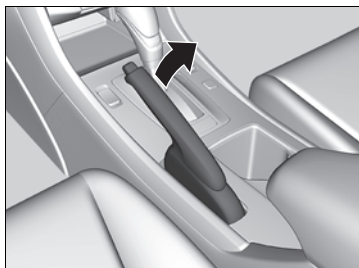
### Towing Your Vehicle

---

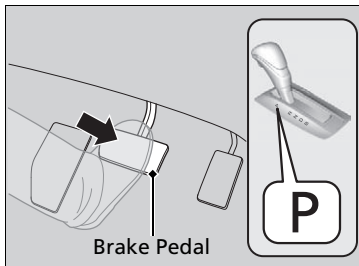
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

📄 **Emergency Towing** P. 561

## Turning on the Power



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

### When Driving

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel as if the brake pedal is sinking down. This is normal.

### Turning on the Power

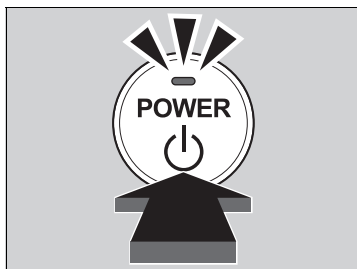
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



3. Press the **POWER** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.
4. Check the **READY** indicator.
  - ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
  - ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
  - ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on, as well as a warning message appears on the multi-information display.
    - **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 88

#### ▶▶ Turning on the Power

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 134

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

➤ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 546

The power system may not activate if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

If the smart entry remote battery is low, touch the **POWER** button with the remote.

➤ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 546

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

You can start driving with the **READY** indicator on. If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and you cannot start driving.

➤ **READY Indicator** P. 75







## ■ Remote Engine Start

You can remotely turn the power system on using the smart entry remote.

### ■ To turn the power system on



Press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

- ▶ The turn signal lights come back on three times, twice, if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

## ⌕ Remote Engine Start

### ⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.


Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. While the vehicle is moving, the range may be reduced.


This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the multi-information display, audio/information screen\*, or audio/information touch screen\*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The shift lever is in a position other than .
- The hood is open, or any door or the trunk is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered smart entry remote is in the vehicle.

## ■ To turn the power system off




Press and hold the  button for one second.

## ▶▶ Remote Engine Start

- There is any antenna failure.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

The power system may be turned off while it is on if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the  button on the smart entry remote.
- The power system is turned off by using the smart entry remote.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The hood is open.
- The shift lever is in a position other than **P**.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the power system is on, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters are activated.

## ■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to **[P]**.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

## ■ Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the  button on the smart entry remote

1. While depressing the brake pedal, press the **POWER** button.

When the power system is turned on in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 463


3. Put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to **[D]** or **[B]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## » Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the  button on the smart entry remote

The power system is off when the shift lever is moved out of **[P]** before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

## » Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognize that you can start.

Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator is on before you start to drive.

## Precautions While Driving

### In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## Transmission

### Creeping

As with a conventional gasoline-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

### Precautions While Driving

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

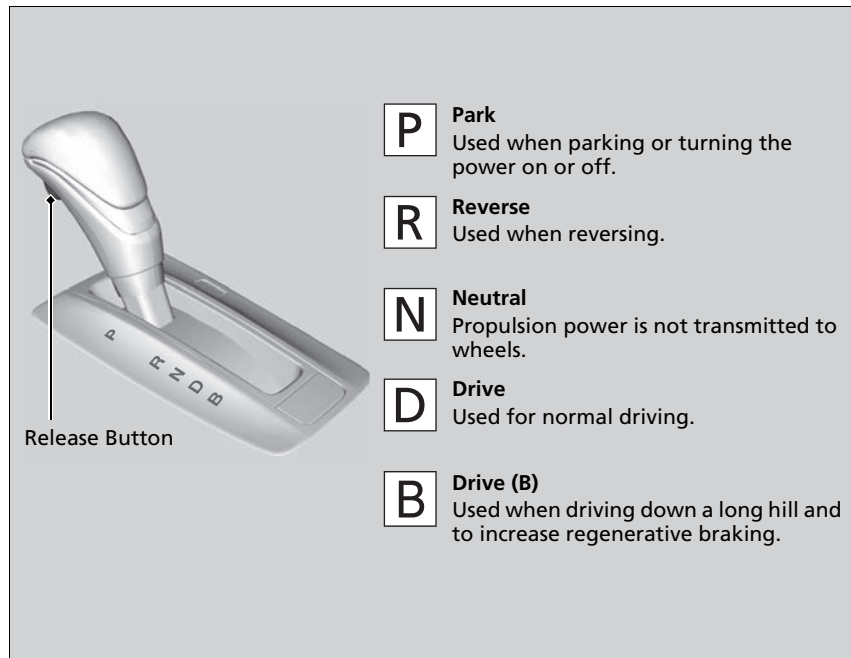
#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



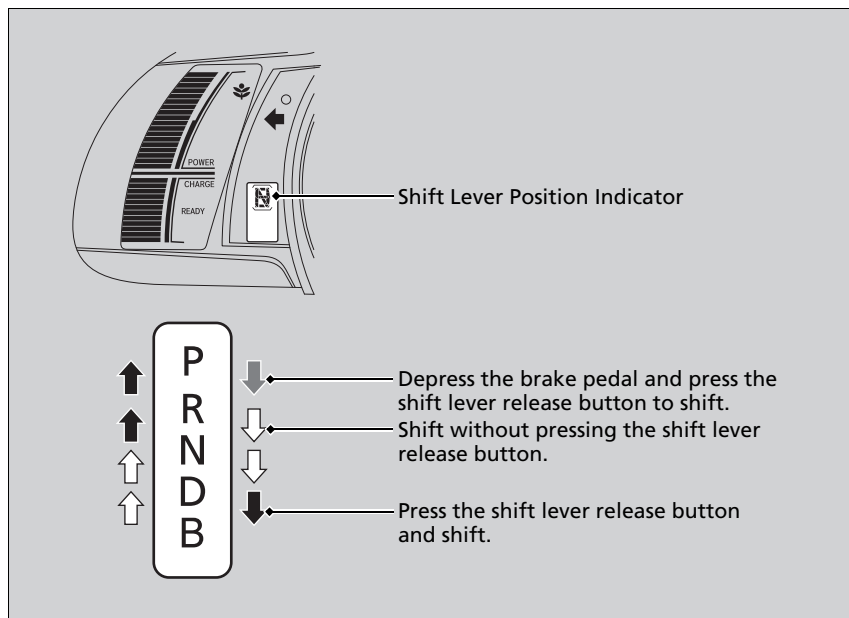
### ►► Shifting

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in **P**.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

## Shift Lever Operation



### Shift Lever Operation

When you change the shift lever from **[D]** to **[R]** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

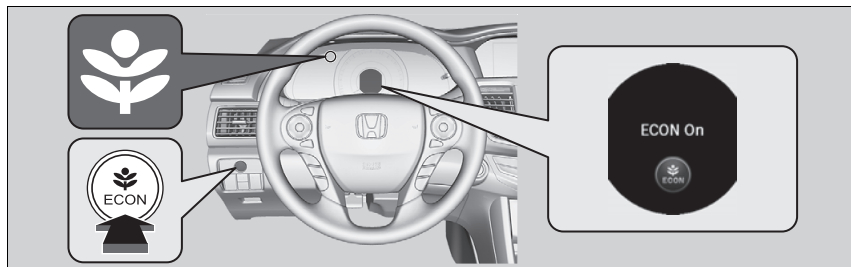
If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

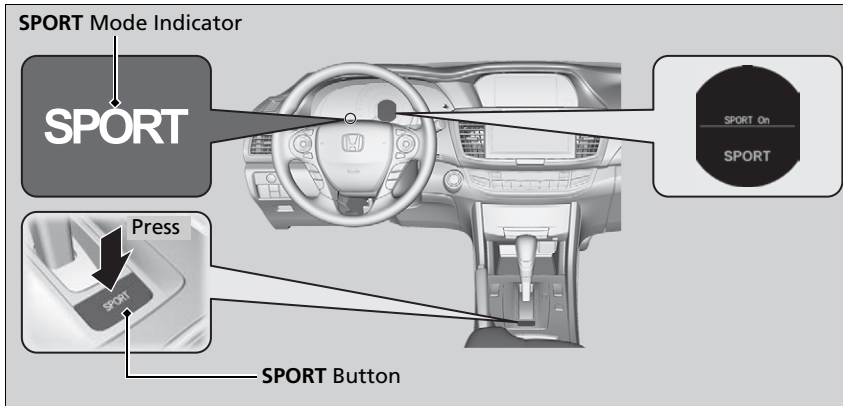
## ECON Button



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your driving range by adjusting the performance of the climate control system.

## SPORT Mode



To turn the SPORT mode on and off, press the **SPORT** button.

The SPORT mode increases engine performance and handling.

This mode is not recommended for fuel economy enhancement, but suitable for driving on hills or through curves on mountain roads.

The SPORT mode is turned off every time you start the power system, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

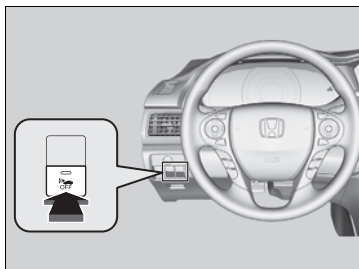


## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 12 mph (20 km/h) or less.

Canadian models

### ■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System Button



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

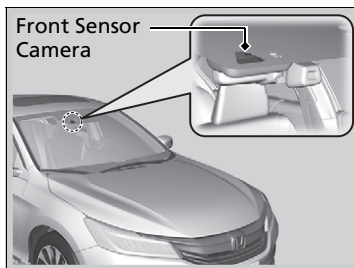
- The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC, and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

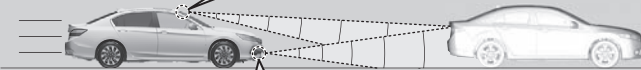
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

### When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.



- Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~
- Shift position for ACC: In **D**.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on expressways or freeways in good weather conditions.

#### ⚠ WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability.

When your vehicle speed drops below 22 mph (35 km/h), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes.

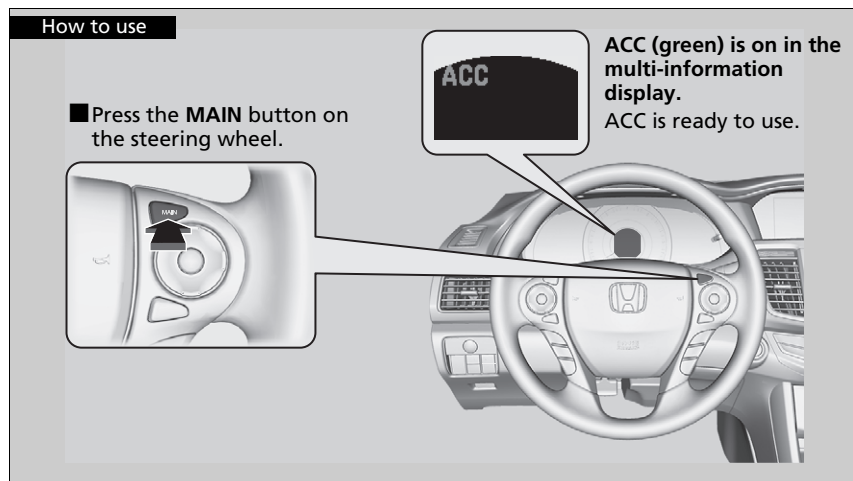
Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

#### Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

## ■ How to activate the system



## ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, ACC and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are both turned on or off.

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

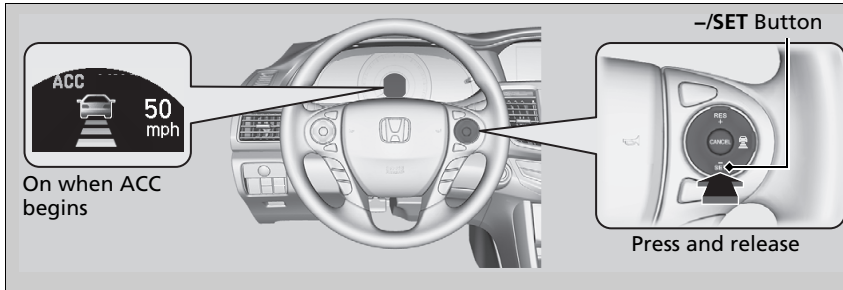
### 🔍 ACC Conditions and Limitations P. 434

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

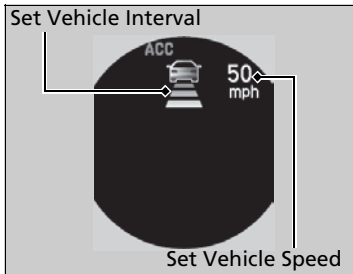
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press down the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.



When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the multi-information display.

## ▶▶ To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the multi-information display between mph and km/h.

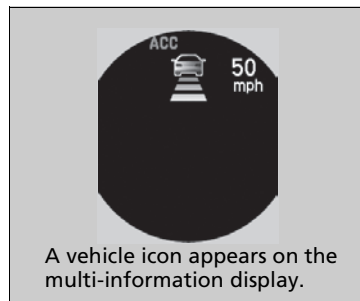
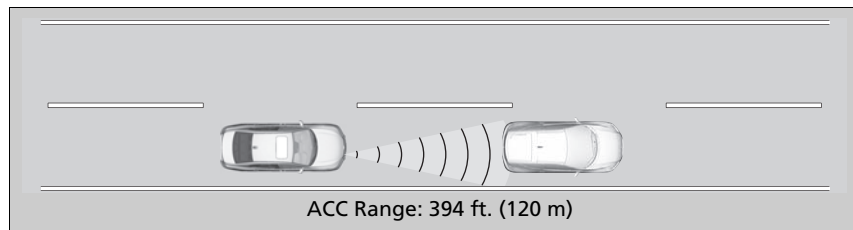
▶ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

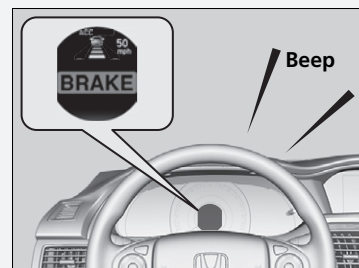
➤ **To Set or Change Following-Interval** P. 437



When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## ▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display. Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



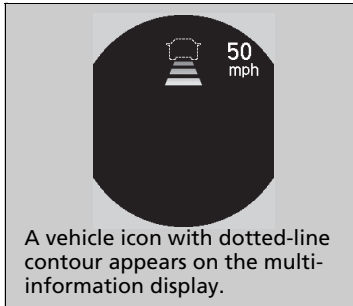
Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Pre-Running Car Detect Beep** setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 108, 295, 314

## ■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

## ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

### ⌘ When in Operation

#### Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

➤ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 434

### ⌘ When you depress the accelerator pedal

While the accelerator pedal is depressed, the system does not apply the brakes to keep the following-interval, as well as the **BRAKE** message on the multi-information display does not appear.

➤ **When in Operation** P. 432



## ■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

📖 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 427

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the radar sensor cover is dirty.
- When the front of the vehicle tilts up due to heavy cargo in the trunk or rear seats.
- When tire chains are installed.

## 📖 ACC Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).

📖 **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 467

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

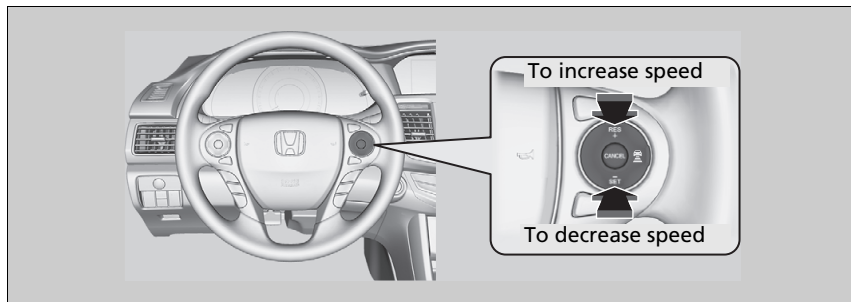
📖 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 427

### ■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.

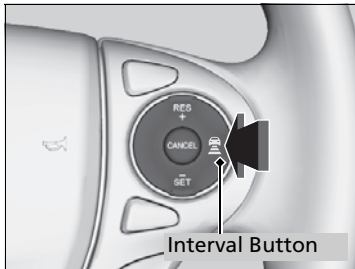



- Each time you press the switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

## ► To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set following-interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.





## ■ To Set or Change Following-Interval



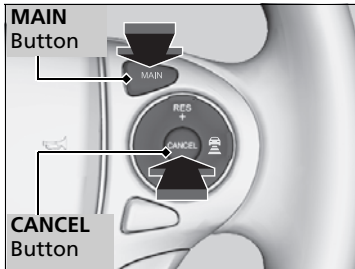
Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through short, middle, long, and extra long following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle’s following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Vehicle Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		84 feet 26 meters 1.1 sec	102 feet 31 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		111 feet 34 meters 1.5 sec	139 feet 43 meters 1.5 sec
Long		155 feet 48 meters 2.1 sec	202 feet 62 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		215 feet 66 meters 3.0 sec	285 feet 87 meters 3.0 sec

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - The **ACC** indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

## ►►To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

### ■ Automatic cancellation

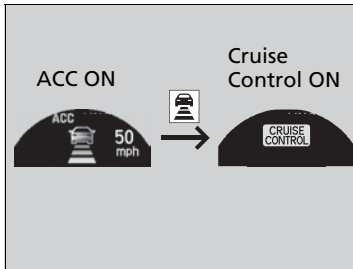
The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:


- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.


### ▶ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **RES/+** button.

## ■ To Switch ACC to Cruise Control



Press and hold the  (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the multi-information display for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise and the Cruise Mode indicator is displayed.

To switch back to ACC, press and hold the  button again for one second. **ACC Mode Selected** appears on the multi-information display for two seconds.

## ■ When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

If you keep the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## ▶▶ To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.



## ■ To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## ►► To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

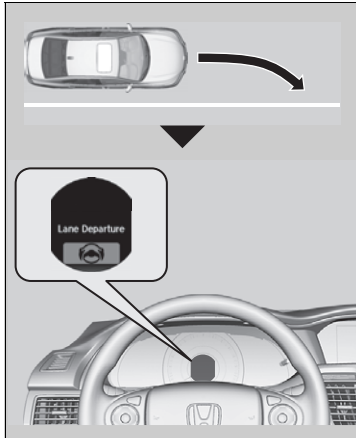
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control canceled automatically.

## Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system determines a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

### How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the multi-information display.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

### Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

📖 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 427

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

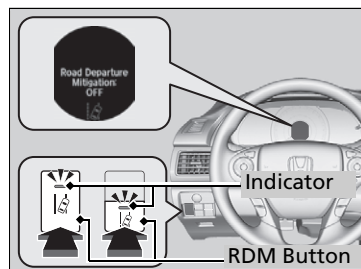
📖 **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 445

## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.


## ■ RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the multi-information display when the system is on.

## ▶▶ How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

▶ Indicators P. 84

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## ▶▶ RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the multi-information display, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

## ■ RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ LKAS camera  
Monitors the lane lines.

■ Tactile and visual alerts  
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

➡ If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

### ▣ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

#### ▣ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages P. 88

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

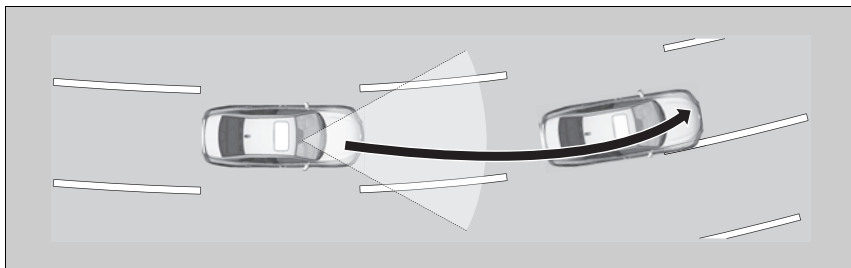
#### ▣ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 452

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

#### ▣ Front Sensor Camera P. 427

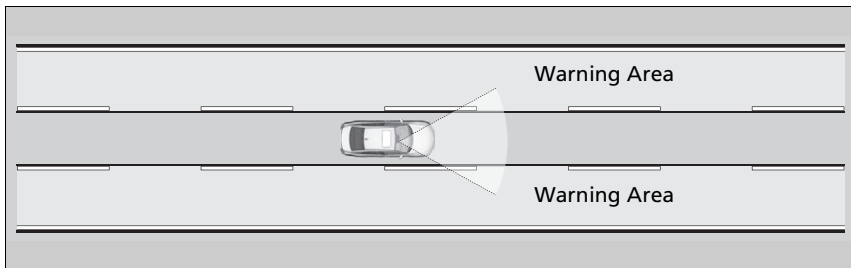
## ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



## ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed on while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

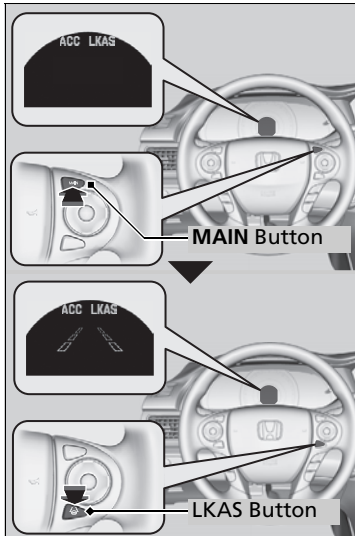
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When lane is detected, system will recover automatically.

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

## ■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.

- ▶ The LKAS is on in the multi-information display.  
The system is ready to use.

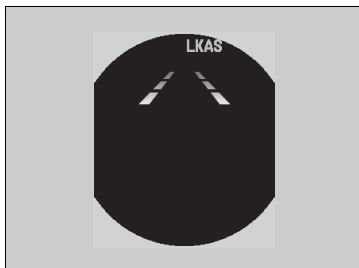
2. Press the LKAS button.

- ▶ Lane outlines appear on the multi-information display.  
The system is activated.

## ▶▶ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

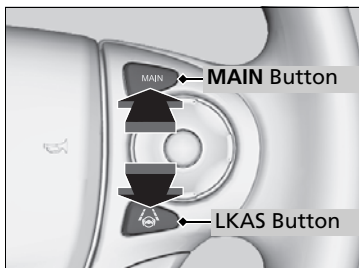




3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.

- ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## To cancel



To cancel the LKAS:

Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

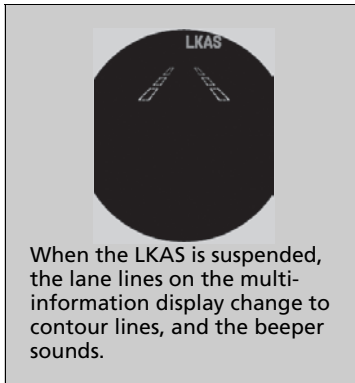
The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

## When the System can be Used

The LKAS temporarily deactivates when it fails to detect lane lines. When the system detects the lines again, it comes back on automatically.

## To cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.



■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  - Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.

**Models with automatic intermittent wipers**

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  - The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

**All models**

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  - Increasing the vehicle speed to about 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
  - The steering wheel is quickly turned.
  - You fail to steer the vehicle.
  - The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.
  - Driving through a sharp curve.
  - Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).
- Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

*Continued*

■ **The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

## ■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ **Environmental conditions**

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

**■ Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

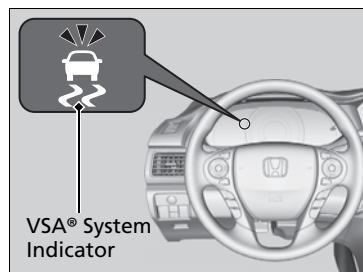
**■ Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

### ■ VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the motor does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### ►► Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

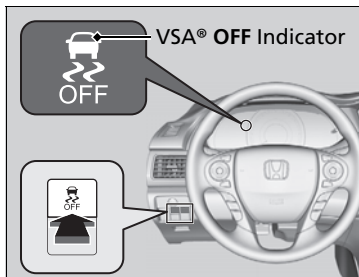
VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.


## VSA® OFF Button




This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially turn the VSA features on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


The traction control stops fully functioning, allowing the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. The VSA® **OFF** indicator will also come on.



To turn it on again, press the  (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.



VSA® is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you press the  button the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

With the  button pressed, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but VSA® traction and stability enhancement becomes less effective.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the  button pressed.

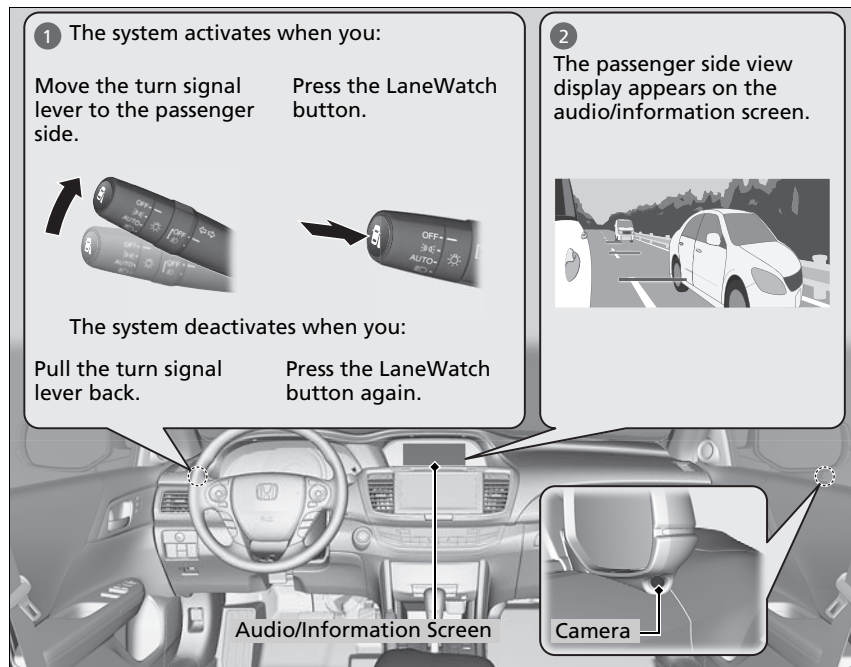
When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the  button pressed if you are not able to free it without.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to press the  button again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the  button pressed (indicator on).

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

## LaneWatch™

Is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



### ▶▶ LaneWatch™

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

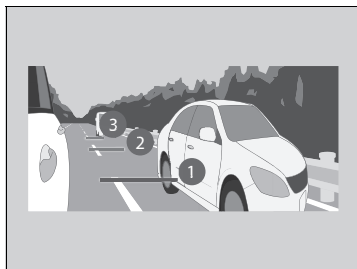
- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

## ■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Reference Lines:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display Time after Turn off:** Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings.
  - ▶ **Customized Features** P. 295, 314
  - ▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 188

## ■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

## ▶ LaneWatch™

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

## ▶ Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

\* Not available on all models



## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display.

### ■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:

- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.

🔧 **Checking Tires** P. 516

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

### 🔧 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.

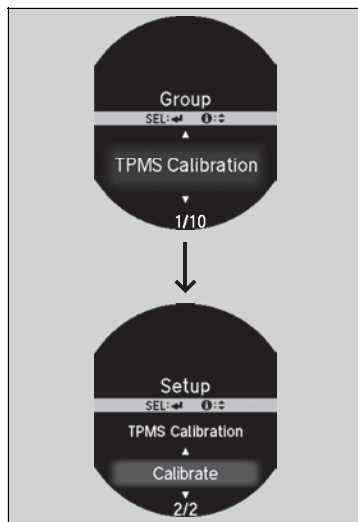
🔧 **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 516

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.



You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.  
▶ **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.  
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
3. Press the button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.  
▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

#### ▶▶▶ TPMS Calibration

- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-60 mph (48-97 km/h).
- During this period, if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tire pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

You can calibrate the system using the audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 295, 314

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

\* Not available on all models

U.S. models

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimize the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

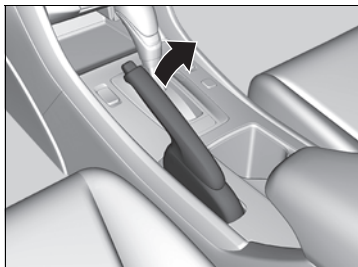
### ⚠ High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the engine.

## Brake System

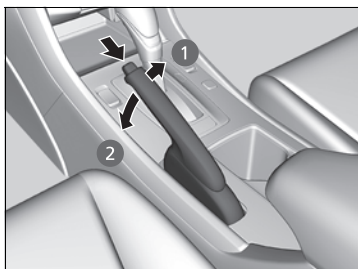
### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



#### To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.



#### To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

#### Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirling sound from the motor compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

#### Parking Brake

##### NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release Parking Brake** appears on the multi-information display.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 466

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 465

## ✎ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and shifting to **[B]**.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while the brake system activates. This is normal.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

### » Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When snow chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.



## Brake Assist System

---

### ■ Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

#### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

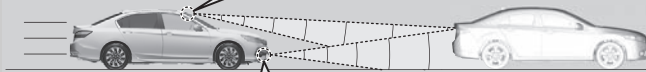
## Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

### ■ How the system works

#### When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

#### ▣ Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

##### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

▣ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 471

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▣ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 427

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

#### ▣ How the system works

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when your vehicle speed is between 19 and 62 mph (30 and 100 km/h) with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

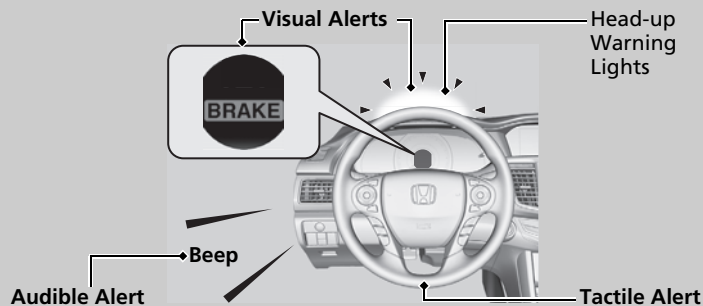
When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

Continued

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long/Normal/Short**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through multi-information display setting options.

- **List of customizable options** P. 111

## ■ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.

- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

## ► When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.

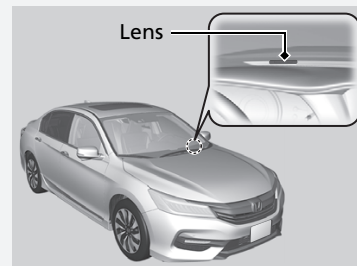
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

- **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 471

The head-up warning uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.

Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.



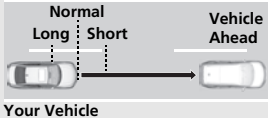
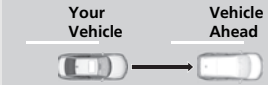

## ► Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

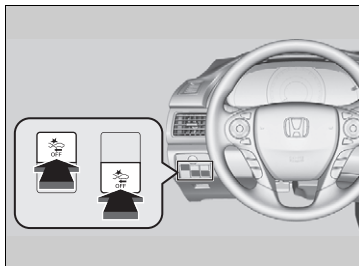
- **Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator** P. 79

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Steering Wheel	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in <b>Long</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Short</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	In case of an oncoming vehicle detected, rapid vibration is provided.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	—	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.			Forcefully applied

## ■ CMBS™ On and Off



Press this button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the multi-information display reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you turn the power system on.

## ► Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

► **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 471

## ■ CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

### 📷 Front Sensor Camera P. 427

#### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

#### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.

### ■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

**■ Automatic shutoff**

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.



## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

### ■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

### ■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

### ■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

## ► Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Move the shift lever from **D** to **P**.
4. Turn off the power system.

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### » Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### » When Stopped

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

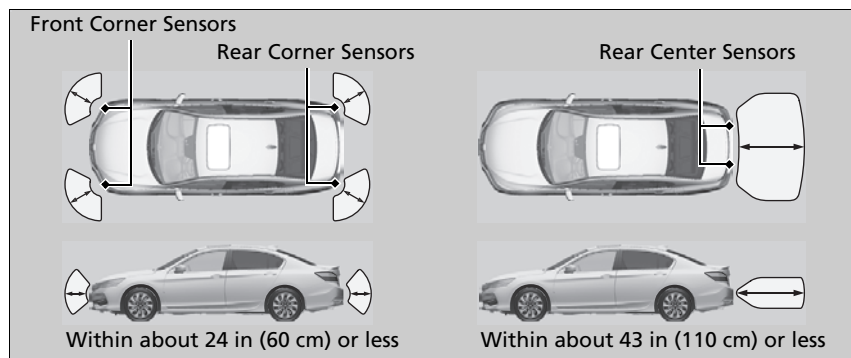
When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System \*

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ►► Parking Sensor System \*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

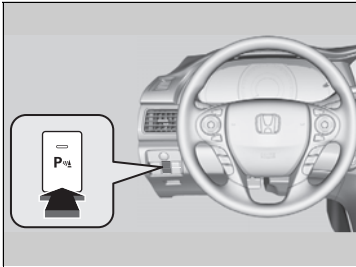
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear center and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The front corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **[P]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

### ⌘ Parking Sensor System\*

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

\* Not available on all models

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Center Sensors		
Moderate	—	Rear: About 43-24 in (110-60 cm)	Blinks in Yellow*1	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)		
Continuous	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	Blinks in Red	

\*1:At this stage, only the center sensors detect obstacles.

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for ten seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button blinks.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds once.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

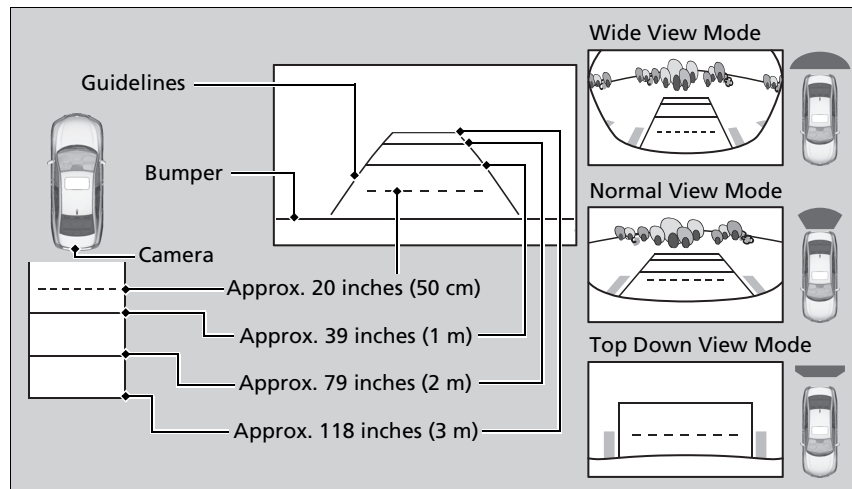
### ☒ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

**Customized Features P. 295**

#### Fixed Guideline

**On:** Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### Dynamic Guideline

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

**Models with one display**

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

**Models with two displays**

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.



: Wide view



: Normal view



: Top down view

If the last used viewing mode is Wide view or Normal view, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into **R**. If Top down view was last used, Wide view mode is selected.

If you shift out of **R** in Top down view mode, then shift into **R** again 10 seconds later, Wide view mode is selected.



## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

#### Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

### ■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit [www.hondacars.com](http://www.hondacars.com). In Canada, visit [www.honda.ca](http://www.honda.ca) for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

### ■ Fuel tank capacity: 14.8 US gal (56 liters)

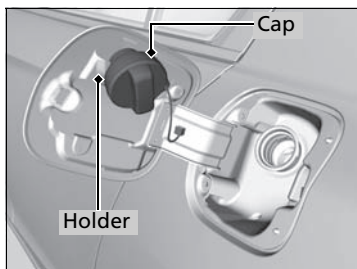
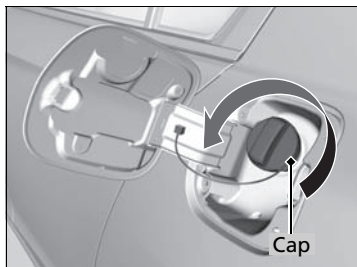
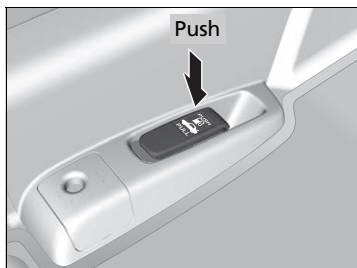
#### » Fuel Information

##### NOTICE

We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service. Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the power system.
3. Push on the fuel fill door release handle at the foot of the driver's seat.  
▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.  
▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.  
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the fuel nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

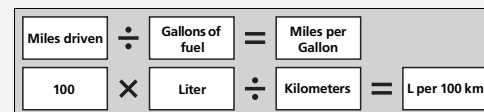
### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the multi-information display.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit <http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/>

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	486
Safety When Performing Maintenance.....	487
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	488

## **Maintenance Minder™**..... 489

## **Maintenance Under the Hood**

Maintenance Items Under the Hood.....	493
Opening the Hood .....	494
Recommended Engine Oil .....	495
Oil Check .....	496
Adding Engine Oil .....	497
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter .....	498

Cooling System.....	500
Inverter Coolant.....	502
Transmission Fluid.....	503
Brake Fluid.....	504
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	505

## **Replacing Light Bulbs**..... 506

## **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades**..... 514

## **Checking and Maintaining Tires**

Checking Tires .....	516
Tire and Loading Information Label.....	517
Tire Labeling .....	517
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).....	519

Wear Indicators .....	521
Tire Service Life .....	521
Tire and Wheel Replacement .....	522
Tire Rotation .....	523
Winter Tires .....	524
<b>12-Volt Battery</b> .....	525

## **Remote Transmitter Care**

Replacing the Button Battery .....	526
------------------------------------	-----

## **Climate Control System Maintenance**... 527

## **Cleaning**

Interior Care .....	528
Exterior Care.....	530

## **Accessories and Modifications**..... 533

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 504
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 516
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 506
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 514

### » Inspection and Maintenance

#### U.S. models

**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display (MID).

➤ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 491

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at [www.techinfo.honda.com](http://www.techinfo.honda.com).

➤ **Authorized Manuals** P. 573

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power system is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

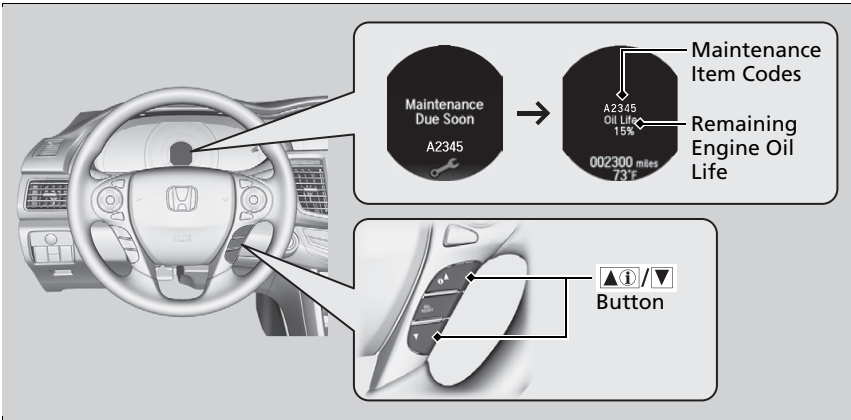
The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the multi-information display every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Engine Oil Life

- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the  (Information) button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the multi-information display.




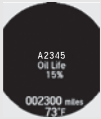


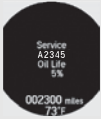


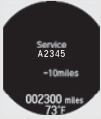

▣ Displaying the Engine Oil Life

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

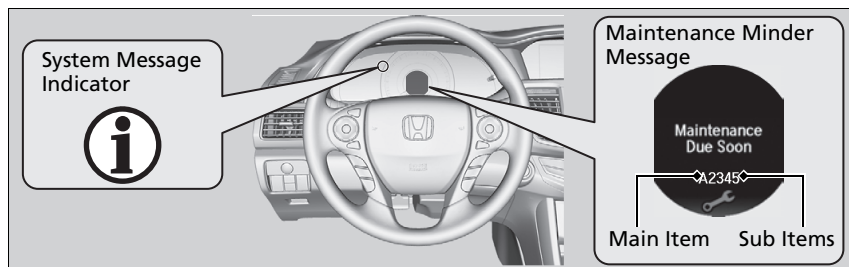


**Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display**

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
<b>Maintenance Due Soon</b> 	15 % 	The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the  (Information) button, this message will go off.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.
<b>Maintenance Due Now</b> 	5 % 	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the  button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
<b>Maintenance Past Due</b> 	Negative Distance 	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the  button to switch to another display.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (i) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

## Maintenance Service Items



### Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil*<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil*<sup>1</sup> and oil filter</li> <li>• Inspect front and rear brakes/service as necessary</li> <li>• Check parking brake adjustment</li> <li>• Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots</li> <li>• Inspect suspension components</li> <li>• Inspect driveshaft boots</li> <li>• Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA)</li> <li>• Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids</li> <li>• Inspect exhaust system<sup>#</sup></li> <li>• Inspect fuel lines and connections<sup>#</sup></li> <li>• Check expiration date for TRK bottle</li> </ul>

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate tires</li> </ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace air cleaner element*<sup>2</sup></li> <li>• Replace dust and pollen filter*<sup>3</sup></li> </ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace transmission fluid*<sup>4</sup></li> </ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace spark plugs</li> <li>• Inspect valve clearance</li> </ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine coolant</li> </ul>

\*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

\*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

\*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 47,500 miles (75,000 km) or 3 years.

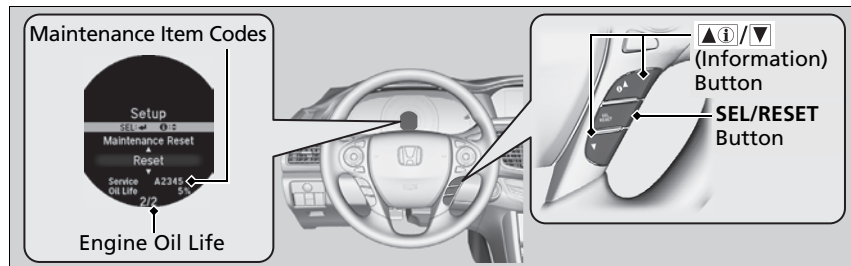
\*1: If a message **Service** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

Continued

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the ▲①/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
3. Press the ▲①/▼ button until **Maintenance Reset** appears on the display.
4. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
5. Select **Reset** with the ▲①/▼ button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - The displayed maintenance items disappear, and the engine oil life display returns to **100%**.

To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **Cancel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

## ►► Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

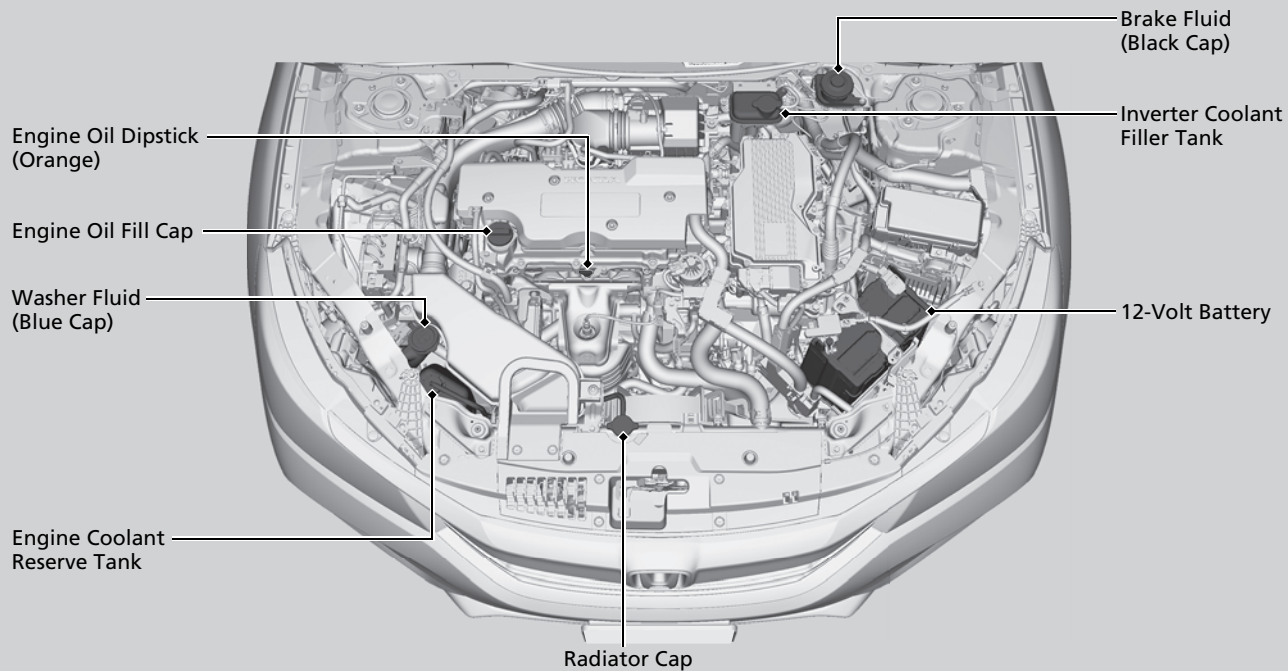
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

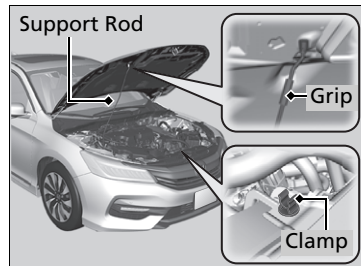
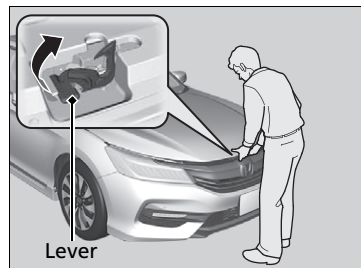
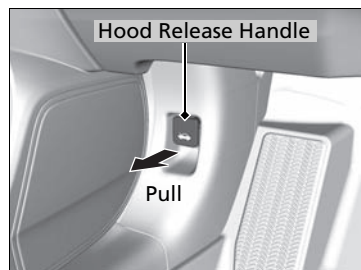
You can reset the engine oil life display using the audio/information screen\* or audio/information touch screen\*.

► **Customized Features** P. 295, 314

## Maintenance Items Under the Hood



## Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
  - The hood will pop up slightly.
3. Push up the hood latch lever in the center of the hood to release the lock mechanism, and open the hood.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

### ►► Opening the Hood

#### NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised.  
The hood will strike the wipers, and may damage either the hood or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

## Recommended Engine Oil

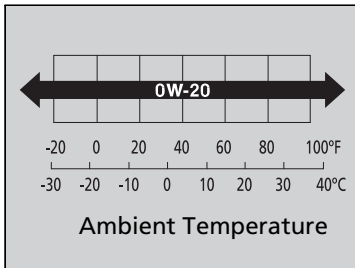
- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

Use Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.



### ■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

### ►► Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

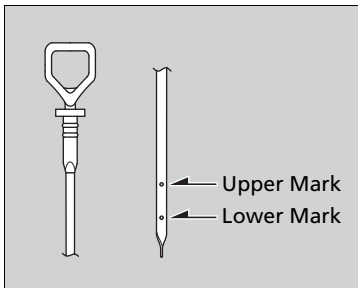
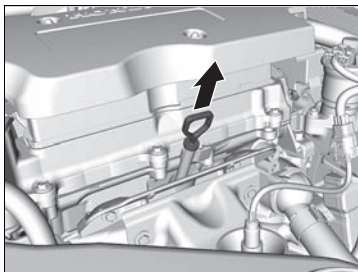
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.

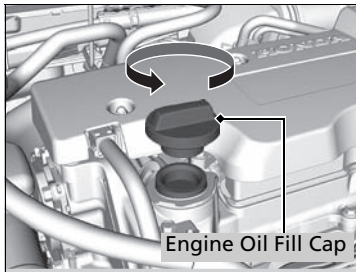


1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.



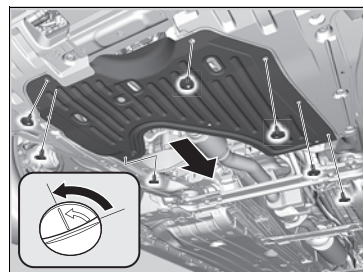
## Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

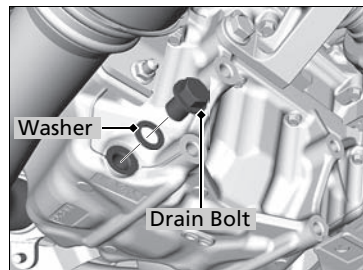
Turning the power system on automatically starts the engine if the High Voltage battery charge level gauge shows two segments or less.

❏ **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge** P. 99

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the multi-information display.



1. Remove the engine under cover.

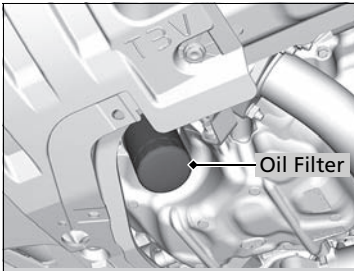


2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
3. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

### Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

#### NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.



5. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
6. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
  - If it is stuck, you must detach it.
7. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
  - Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil gasket.
8. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
  - Tightening torque:  
30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
9. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
  - Engine oil change capacity (including filter):  
4.0 US qt (3.8 L)
10. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
11. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
12. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
  - If necessary, add more engine oil.

#### ✕ Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

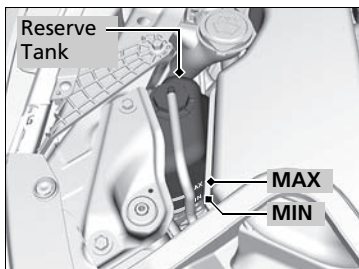
## Cooling System

### Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

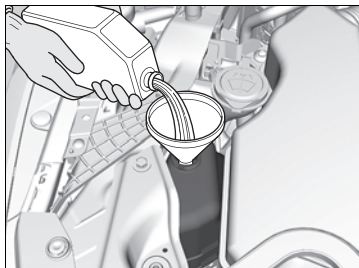
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.



2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### ►► Cooling System

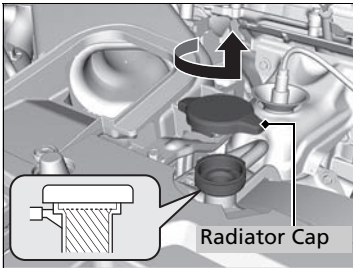
#### NOTICE

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

## Radiator

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Inverter Coolant

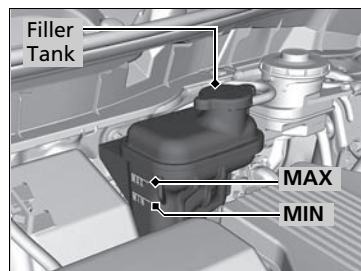
### Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the inverter coolant level every time you refuel. Check the filler tank. Add the inverter coolant accordingly.

Have a dealer replace the inverter coolant.

### Checking the Coolant



1. **Make sure the inverter is cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the filler tank.
3. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
4. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### ►► Inverter Coolant

#### NOTICE

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

## Transmission Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

### Transmission Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.**

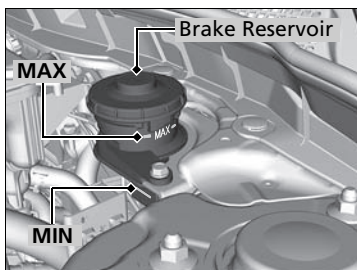
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and may even damage it.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

## Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3**

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

#### » Brake Fluid

##### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

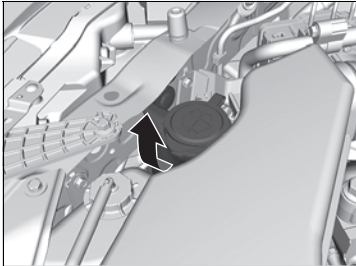
If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

### Canadian models

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ⌘ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.



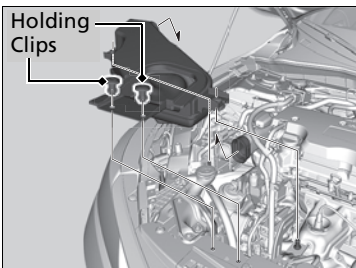
## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<b>High beam headlight:</b>	<b>LED type*</b>
<b>High beam headlight:</b>	<b>60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*</b>
<b>Low beam headlight:</b>	<b>LED type*</b>
<b>Low beam headlight:</b>	<b>55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*</b>

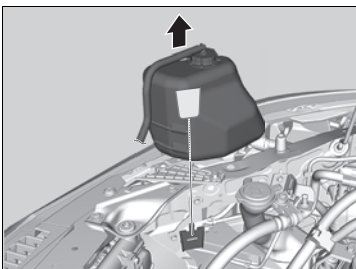
### High Beam Headlights

#### Models with halogen headlights



#### Passenger side

1. Unlock the holding clips, then remove the upper part of the air intake duct.



2. Remove the reserve tank.

#### Headlight Bulbs

##### Models with halogen headlights

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

##### All models

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

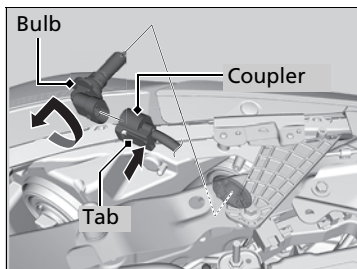
##### Models with halogen headlights

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

#### High Beam Headlights

##### Models with LED headlights

High beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



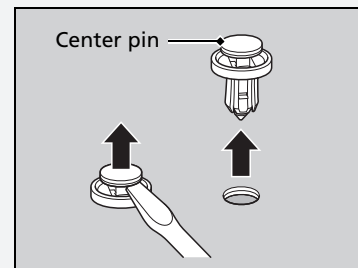
**Both sides**

3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

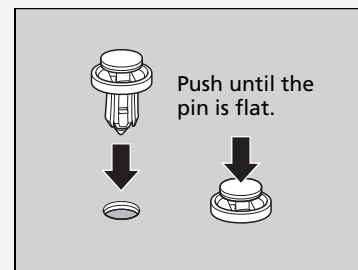
►► High Beam Headlights

**Models with halogen headlights**

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



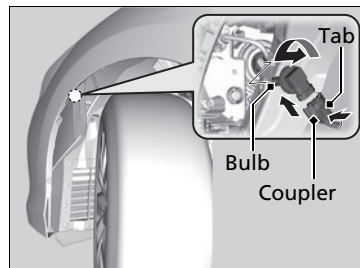
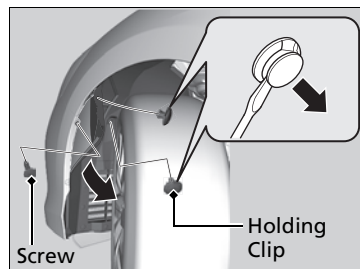
Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



*Continued*

## Low Beam Headlights

### Models with halogen headlights



1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.

**Passenger side:** Turn the steering wheel to the left.

**Driver side:** Turn the steering wheel to the right.

2. Remove the holding clip and screw, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

## Fog Lights

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

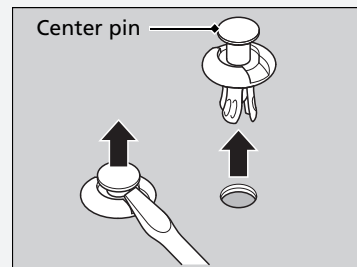
## Low Beam Headlights

### Models with LED headlights

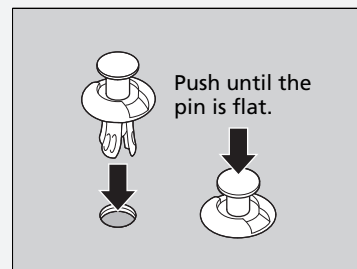
Low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

### Models with halogen headlights

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Models with LED headlights

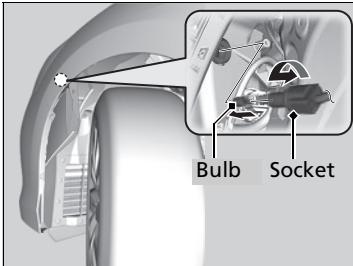
## Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Side Marker Light: 3 CP**

Turn the steering wheel and pull the inner fender back in the same way as when replacing the halogen low beam headlight bulbs\*.

🔧 **Low Beam Headlights** P. 508



1. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models with LED headlights

## Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

\* Not available on all models

Models with halogen headlights

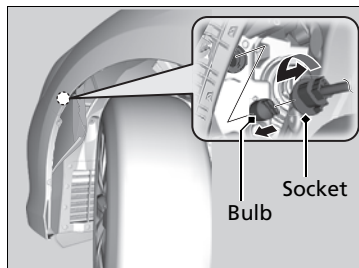
## Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Light: 28/8 W (Amber)**

Turn the steering wheel and pull the inner fender back in the same way as when replacing the halogen low beam headlight bulbs\*.

🔧 **Low Beam Headlights** P. 508



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

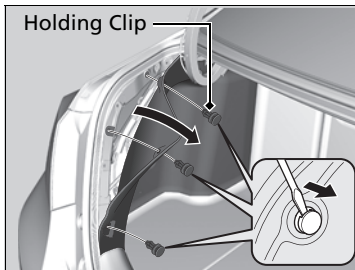
## Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

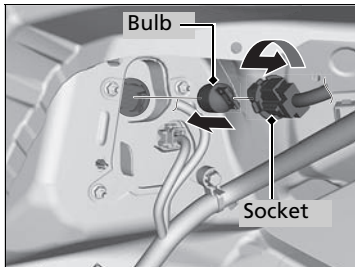
## Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light, and Rear Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Brake/Taillight: LED**  
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**  
**Rear Side Marker Light: LED**



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

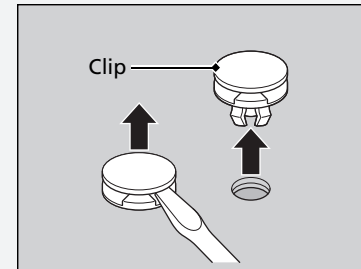


2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

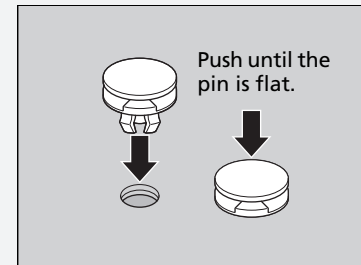
### Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light, and Rear Side Marker Light Bulbs

Brake/taillights and rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.

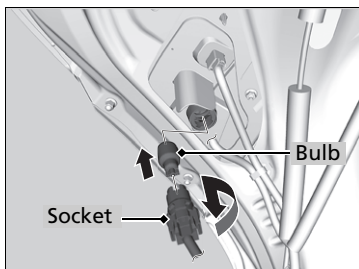
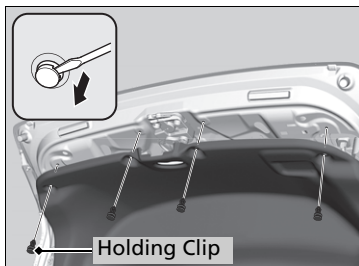


## Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Back-Up Light: 16 W**

**Taillight: LED**



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

► **Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light, and Rear Side Marker Light Bulbs**

P. 511

2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

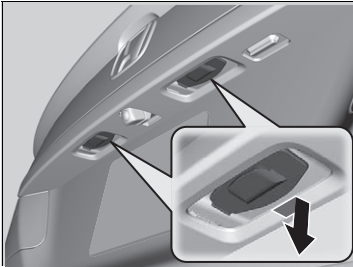
### ► Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

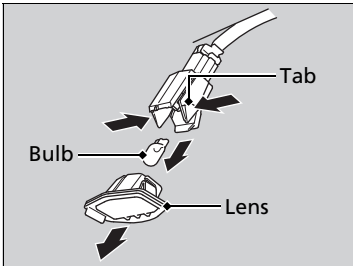
## Rear License Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Rear License Plate Light: 5 W



1. Remove the license plate light assembly by pushing the left edge of the lens toward the right and pulling the assembly out.



2. Remove the lens by pushing the tabs.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## High-Mount Brake Light

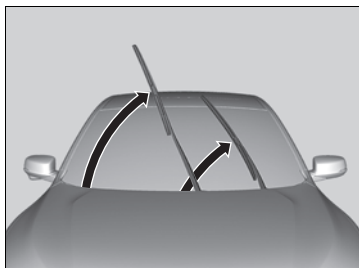
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



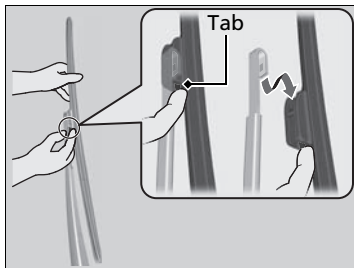
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

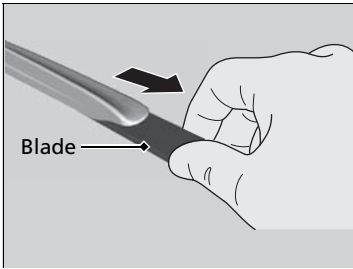


2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

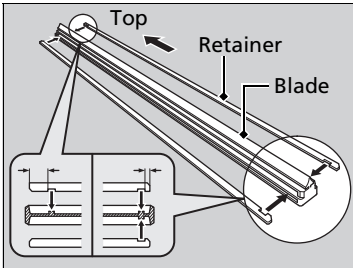
### ✕ Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

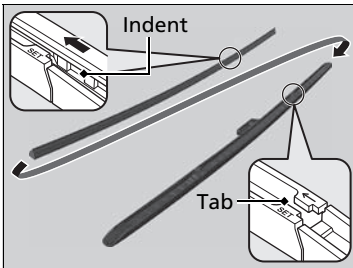
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.



3. Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Remove the retainers from the rubber blade that has been removed, and mount to a new rubber blade.  
► Correctly align the rubber protrusion and the retainer grooves.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.  
► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires. Even tires in good condition can lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

📖 **Wear Indicators** P. 521

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### 📖 Checking Tires

## ⚠️ WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) higher than if checked when cold.

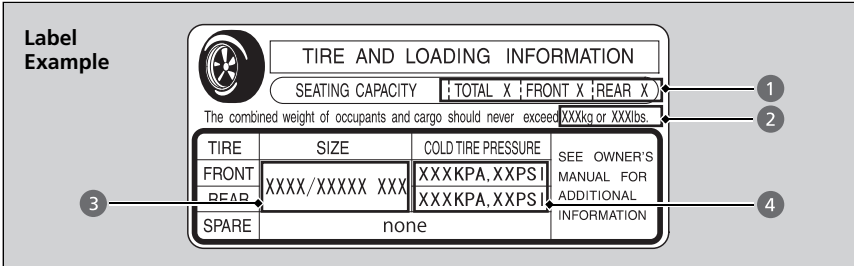
Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

📖 **TPMS Calibration** P. 458

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

# Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

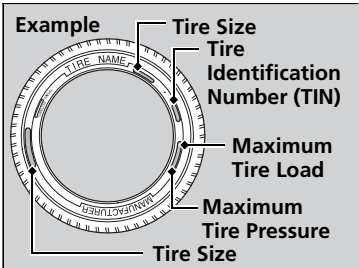


## Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

- 1 The number of people your vehicle can carry.
- 2 The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
- 3 The original tire sizes for front and rear.
- 4 The proper cold tire pressure for front and rear.

# Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

## Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

### 225/50R17 94V

- 225: Tire width in millimeters.  
50: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).  
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).  
17: Rim diameter in inches.  
94: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).  
V: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

## Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

## ■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

## ■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Cold Tire Pressure** – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

**Load Rating** – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

**Maximum Load Rating** – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

**Treadwear Indicators (TWI)** – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

## ►► Tire Identification Number (TIN)

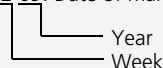
### DOT B97R FW6X 2209

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X: Tire type code.

22 09: Date of manufacture.



## DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

### ■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

### ■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### ▣ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:  
**Treadwear 200**  
**Traction AA**  
**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

## ■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## ■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

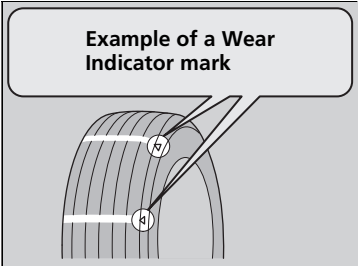
### » Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### » Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

**Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### Checking Tires

#### High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Tire Size	225/50R17 94V
Pressure	35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )



## Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ► Tire and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

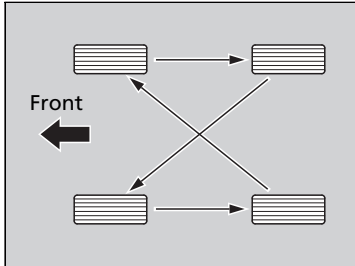
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

## Tire Rotation

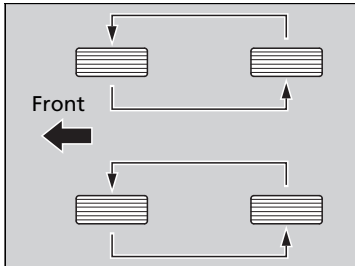
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the multi-information display helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

### ■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

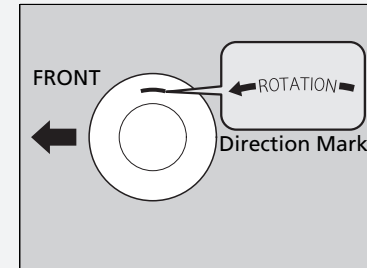
### ■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

### ☒ Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

☒ **TPMS Calibration** P. 458

## Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

**Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1036**

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

### ❧ Winter Tires

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

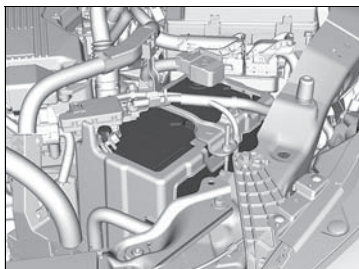
### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the multi-information display will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.  
➤ **Reactivating the audio system** P. 187
- The clock resets.  
➤ **Clock** P. 118
- The navigation system\* is disabled.  
➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### 12-Volt Battery

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

**WARNING:** Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.

**Wash your hands after handling.**

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Please consult a dealer for more information.

\* Not available on all models

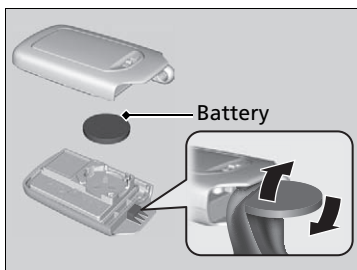
### Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



#### Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
  - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



#### Replacing the Button Battery

##### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

## Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

### Dust and Pollen Filter

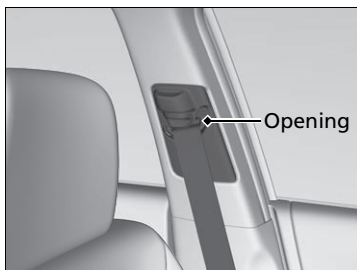
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

## Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.  
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.  
Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

#### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.  
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle. If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

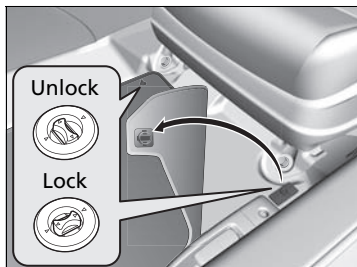
Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.  
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.  
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

#### Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window.  
Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

## Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

## Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

### Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

\* Not available on all models



## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

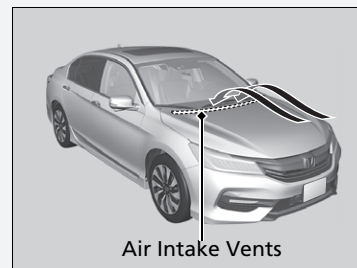
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers\*.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### ⌘ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminum alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing.

### » Applying Wax

#### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

### » Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses


The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.  
 **Fuses** P. 558
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

#### Accessories and Modifications

### **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, provincial, territorial, or local regulations.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

### ⓘ Modifications

#### **WARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

<b>If a Tire Goes Flat</b>	
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire.....	536
<b>Power System Won't Start</b>	
Checking the Procedure.....	545
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak.....	546
Emergency Power System Off.....	547
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	548
<b>Shift Lever Does Not Move</b> .....	550

<b>Overheating</b>	
How to Handle Overheating.....	551
<b>Indicator, Coming On/Blinking</b>	
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On .....	554
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On .....	554
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks .....	555
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On .....	556

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On.....	556
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks .....	557
<b>Fuses</b>	
Fuse Locations .....	558
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	560
<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	561

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

This vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire. If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.


If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

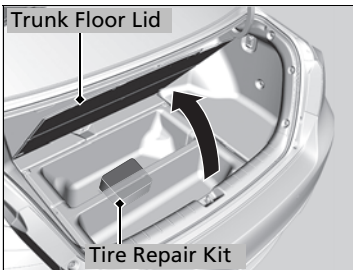
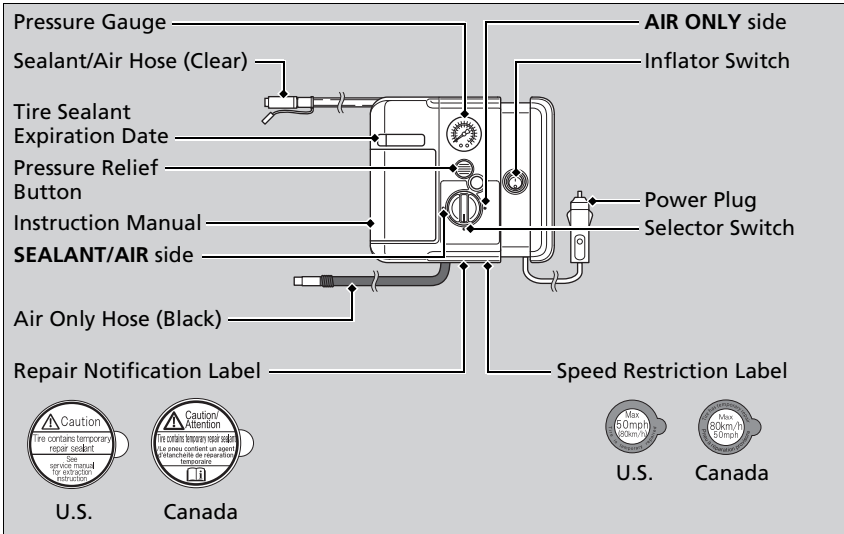
- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the tire contact area.

 Contact Area	When the puncture is:	Kit Use
	Smaller than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	Yes
	Larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire. If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

## Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire



1. Open the trunk floor lid.
2. Take the kit out of the case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

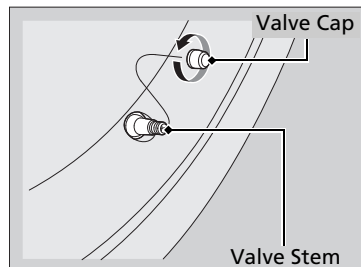
## Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

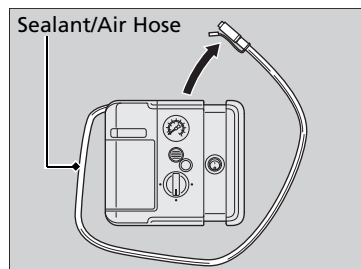
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.



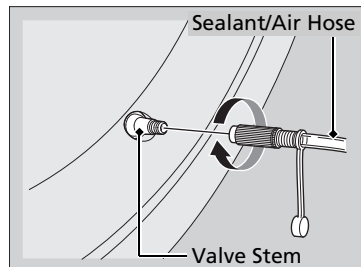
## ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.



2. Remove the sealant/air hose from the packaging.



3. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## ►► Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

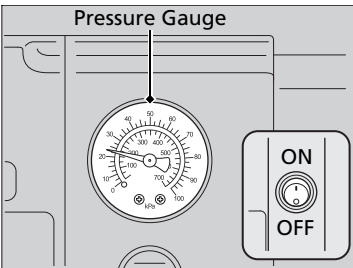
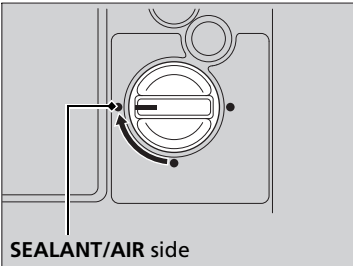
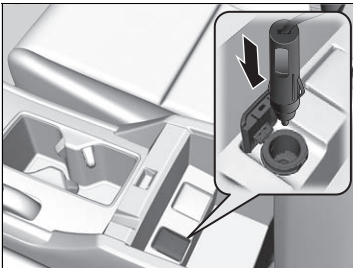
Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



4. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
5. Turn the power system on.
  - Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.
  - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 70
6. Turn the selector switch to **SEALANT/AIR**.
7. Press the inflator switch to turn on the compressor.
  - The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.
8. When the sealant injection is complete, continue to add air.
9. After the air pressure reaches front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (225 kPa), turn off the kit.
  - To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor and read the gauge.

#### ► Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

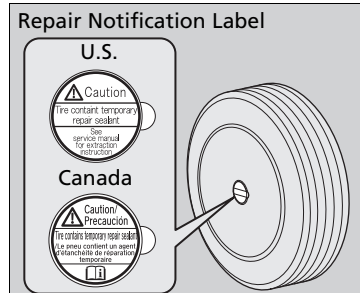
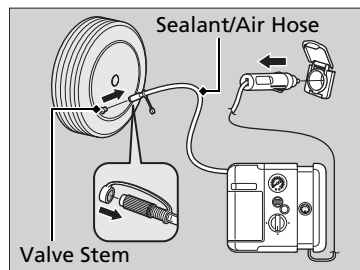
#### NOTICE

Do not operate the tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The accessory power socket and compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal, and your vehicle will need to be towed.

*Continued*



**10.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

**11.** Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

**12.** Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns 0 psi (0 kPa).

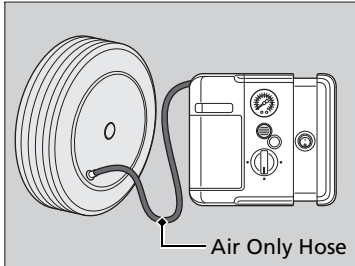
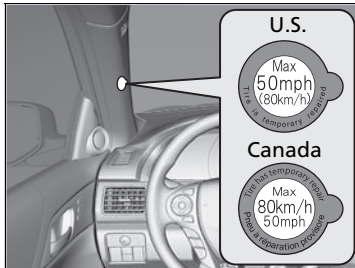
**13.** Apply the repair notification label to the flat surface of the wheel.

► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

#### ►► Injecting Sealant and Air

See a dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

## Distributing the Sealant in the Tire



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.  
► Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
4. Attach the air only hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
5. Turn the selector switch to **AIR ONLY**.  
► Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.  
➤ **Inflating An Under-inflated Tire** P. 543

## Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Stop and recheck the air pressure after every 10 minutes of driving as necessary until you reach the nearest service station where you are able to have the tire permanently repaired or replaced.

6. If the air pressure is:

- Less than 19 psi (130 kPa):

Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

🚚 **Emergency Towing** P. 561

- Front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (225 kPa) or more:

Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

- If the pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

- Greater than 19 psi (130 kPa), but less than front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (225 kPa):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (225 kPa).

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

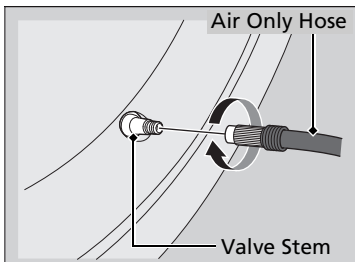
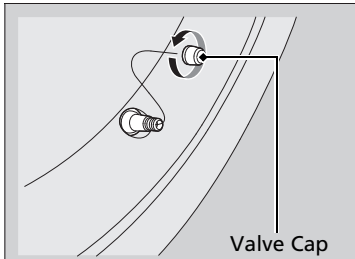
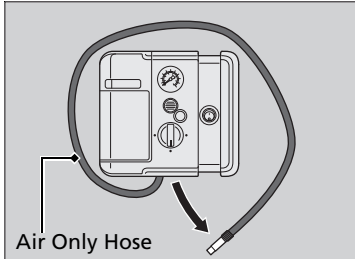
- You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

7. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

8. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

## ■ Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tire.



1. Open the trunk floor lid.

### ► Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire P. 537

2. Remove the kit from the case.  
► Place the kit on flat ground near the tire to be inflated, away from traffic.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
4. Remove the air only hose from the kit.
5. Remove the valve cap.

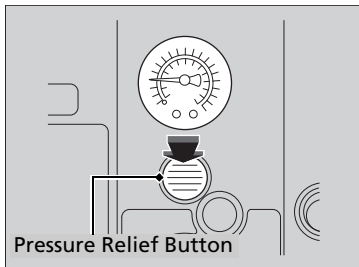
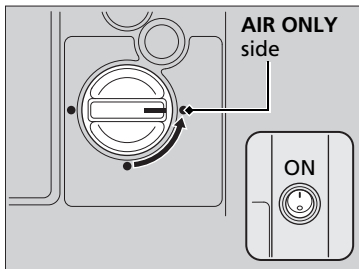
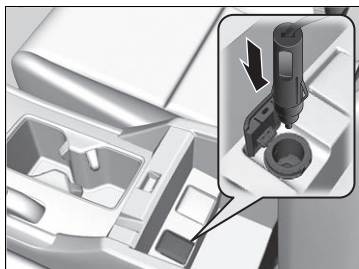
6. Attach the air only hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## ►► Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The accessory power socket and compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued



7. Plug in the kit to the accessory power socket.

► Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

8. Turn the power system on.

► Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

⚠ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 70

9. Turn the selector switch to **AIR ONLY**.

10. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.

► The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.

11. Inflate the tire to the specified air pressure.

12. Turn off the kit.

► Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.

► If overinflated, press the pressure relief button.

13. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

14. Unscrew the air only hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

15. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns 0 psi (0 kPa).

16. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

#### ►► Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

## Checking the Procedure

When the **READY** indicator does not come on and the **Ready to Drive** message does not appear on the multi-information display, check the following items and take appropriate action.

### Checking the Procedure

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

➤ **Jump Starting** P. 548

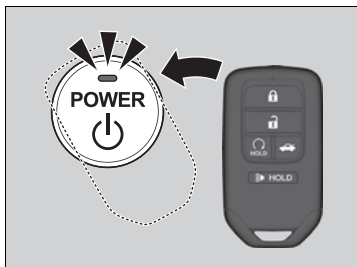
Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or multi-information display messages come on.	The <b>Temperature is Too Cold For Vehicle To Operate</b> message appears.	➤ <b>Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages</b> P. 88
	The <b>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</b> message appears. ▶ Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range. ➤ <b>POWER Button Operating Range</b> P. 141	➤ <b>If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 546
	The <b>POWER SYSTEM</b> indicator comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Check the brightness of the interior lights.	The interior lights are dim or do not come on at all.	Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer.
	The interior lights come on normally.	Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 560
Check the shift lever position.	The shift lever is not in <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> .	Move the shift lever to the <b>P</b> position.
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➤ <b>Immobilizer System Indicator</b> P. 82



## If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

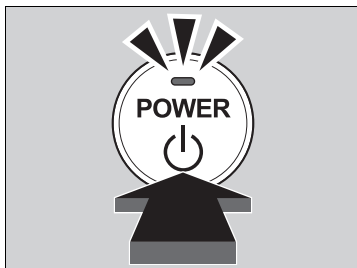
If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display, and the indicator on the **POWER** button flashes, the **READY** indicator does not come on.

Turn on the power system as follows.



1. Touch the center of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the indicator on the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.

► The indicator flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the indicator stays on.
  - The **READY** indicator comes on.
  - If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to **ACCESSORY**.

## Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

### U.S. models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is off. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

### Canadian models

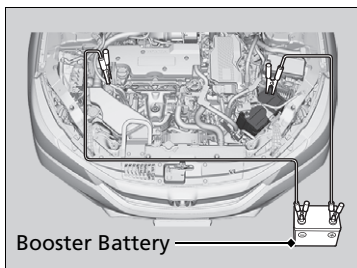
Then press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

### Emergency Power System Off

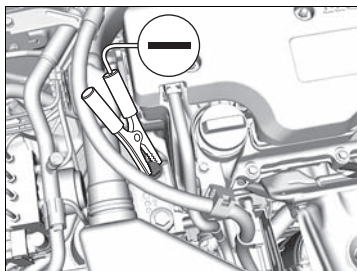
Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the hood.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.



4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## Jump Starting

### **⚠ WARNING**

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

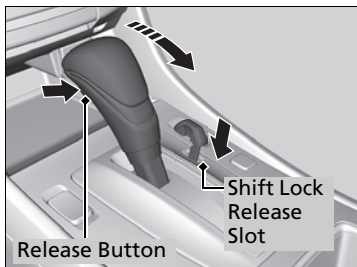
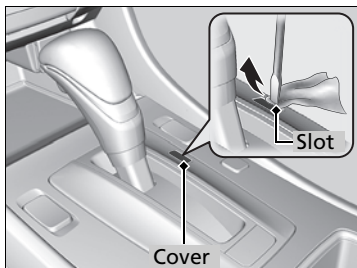
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.
4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
  - The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the multi-information display.
- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the multi-information display.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### The High Temperature. Power Reduced. Message Appears on the Multi-Information Display

The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the multi-information display when the power system temperature is high.

🔧 **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 96

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ▶ Move the shift lever to **P**, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode on, and wait until the message disappears.
  - ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

## ■ The Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears on the Multi-Information Display

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - **No steam or spray present:** Keep the power system on and open the hood.
  - **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

» The Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears on the Multi-Information Display

### **WARNING**

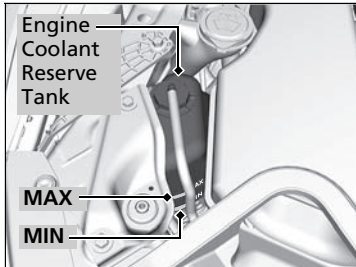
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

### **NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the multi-information display may damage the engine.

## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once the **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message disappears.
  - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.

If the **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

► The Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears on the Multi-Information Display

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.



### If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

#### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

#### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Turn the power system off and let the engine sit for about three minute.
2. Open the hood and check the oil level.
  - ▶ Add oil as necessary.
3. Turn the power system on and check the low oil pressure indicator.
  - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Turn the power off and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

### » If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

### If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not being charged.

#### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

## ■ Tighten Fuel Cap Message

### ■ The message appears on when:

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

### ■ What to do when the message appears:

1. Turn the power system off.
2. Check if the fuel fill cap is fully installed.
  - If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.
3. Drive for several days of normal driving.
  - The message should go off.

### ■ When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, check the fuel fill cap using the procedures described above.

## ► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again next time the engine starts, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

U.S.



Canada



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### ►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the transmission.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If both red and amber brake system indicators come on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

## If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

► Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

### ►► If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

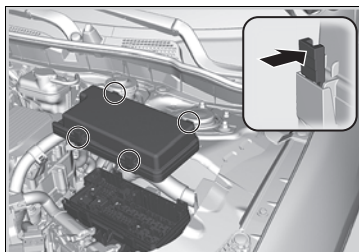
## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

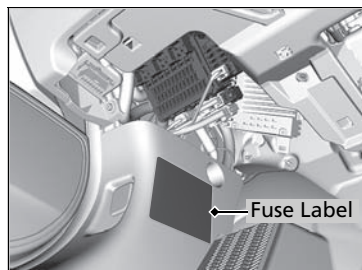
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	150 A
	EPS	70 A
	ESB	40 A
2	Right EPB*	(30 A)
	Fuse Box Option 1	40 A
	Shift By Wire*	(30 A)
	RFC	40 A
	IG Main 1	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
	Engine Electric Water Pump	30 A
	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Wiper Motor	30 A
	FI Main	15 A
5	PCU Electric Water Pump	7.5 A
6	EVTC	20 A
7	IG Hold	10 A
8	DBW	15 A
9	IG Coil	15 A
10	Stop Light	10 A
11	VBU	10 A
12	Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
	Rear Defogger	50 A
	Fuse Box Main 1	60 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	Fuse Box	30 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	30 A
	Heater Motor	40 A
	Left EPB*	(30 A)
	Small Light	20 A
	Fuse Box Option 2	40 A
13	A/C PTC 4	(40 A)
14	A/CPTC 2	(40 A)
15	Front Fog Light + DRL	(10 A)
16	Horn	10 A
17	IG Hold 3-L/R	15 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
18	Interior Light	7.5 A
19	—	—
20	Premium Amp*	(20 A)
21	Back Up	10 A
22	Audio	15 A
23	P-ACT Drive*	(7.5 A)
24	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
25	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
26	IGPS LAF	10 A

## Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

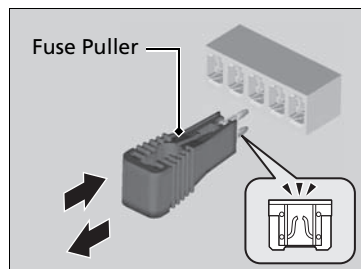
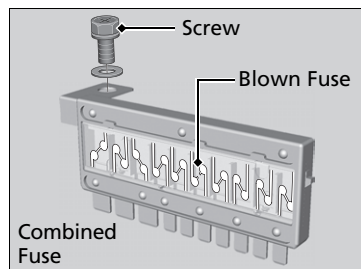
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	A/C	7.5 A
2	DRL	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Meter	10 A
6	SRS	(7.5 A)
7	Option	(7.5 A)
8	–	–
9	Fuel Pump	20 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
10	ABS/VSA	7.5 A
11	VB SOL	10 A
12	Front Wiper	7.5 A
13	ACG	10 A
14	Rear Accessory Power Socket (Console Compartment)	20 A
15	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	(20 A)
16	Moonroof*	(20 A)
17	Front Seat Heaters	(20 A)
18	–	–
19	Passenger Side Door Unlock	10 A
20	Driver Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
21	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
22	Passenger Side Door Lock	10 A
23	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A
24	SRS	10 A
25	Illumination	10 A
26	Key Lock	7.5 A
27	Parking Lights	10 A
28	Lumbar Support	(10 A)
29	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Washer	15 A
31	A/C Main	10 A
32	Driver's Power Window	20 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
33	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
34	Rear Driver Side Power Window	20 A
35	Rear Passenger Side Power Window	20 A
36	Driver's Power Seat Sliding	(20 A)
37	ACCESSORY	7.5 A
38	–	–
39	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
40	Front Accessory Power Socket (Console Panel)	20 A
41	Driver Side Rear Door Lock	10 A
42	Door Lock	20 A
a	SMART	10 A
b	SHIFTER*	(7.5 A)
c	Hybrid System	10 A
d	Hazard	15 A
e	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
f	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
g	Rear Seat Heaters*	(15 A)
h	ACL*	(15 A)
i	–	–
j	IG MON*	7.5 A

\* Not available on all models

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on P. 558 to 559.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

### »Emergency Towing

#### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

#### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.





# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>564</b>
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Motor Number .....	566
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....</b>	<b>567</b>
<b>Reporting Safety Defects .....</b>	<b>568</b>

<b>Emissions Testing</b>	
Testing of Readiness Codes .....	569
<b>Warranty Coverages .....</b>	<b>571</b>
<b>Authorized Manuals .....</b>	<b>573</b>
<b>Customer Service Information .....</b>	<b>574</b>

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Hybrid
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	U.S.: 4,542 lbs (2,060 kg) Canada: 2,060 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.: 2,414 lbs (1,095 kg) Canada: 1,095 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.: 2,161 lbs (980 kg) Canada: 980 kg
Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	13.6 – 15.3 oz (385 – 435 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL 11
Quantity	7.3 – 8.2 cu-in (120 – 135 cm³)

## ■ Engine Specifications

Displacement	126 cu-in (1,993 cm³)
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR7E11S

## ■ Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number
Type	of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	14.8 US gal (56 ℓ)

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ) Canada: 4.5 ℓ
---------------	--

## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55W (H11)* <sup>1</sup> LED* <sup>2</sup>
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3)* <sup>1</sup> LED* <sup>2</sup>
Fog Lights	LED
Parking/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights* <sup>1</sup>	28/8 W (Amber)
Front Turn Signal Lights* <sup>2</sup>	LED
Front Side Marker Lights* <sup>2</sup>	3CP
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear License Plate Lights	5W
Trunk Light	5W
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8W
Ceiling Light	8W
Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4W
Courtesy Lights	2CP

\*1: Models with halogen headlights

\*2: Models with LED headlights

## ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3
-----------	------------------------------------

## ■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)
Capacity	Change 2.23 US qt (2.11 ℓ)

## ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	-Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20 -API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil
Change	3.7 US qt (3.5 ℓ)
Capacity	Change including filter 4.0 US qt (3.8 ℓ)

## ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water 1.51 US gal (5.71 ℓ)
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.19 US gal (0.71 ℓ) in the reserve tank)

## ■ Inverter Coolant

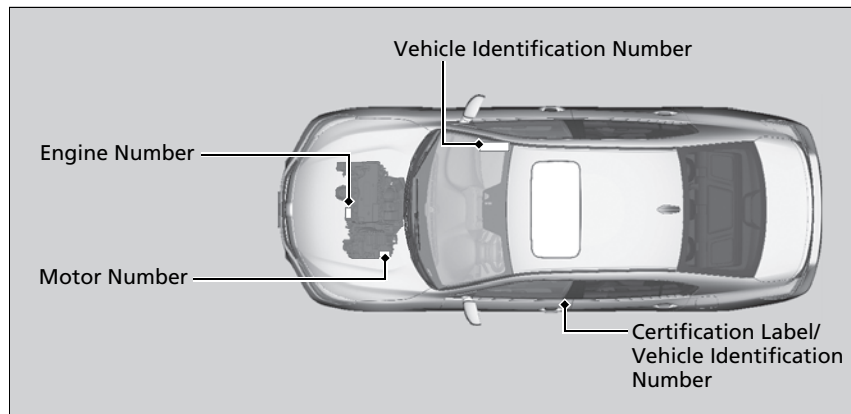
Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water 0.31 US gal (1.17 ℓ)
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.08 US gal (0.3 ℓ) in the filler tank)

## ■ Tire

	Size	225/50R17 94V
Regular	Pressure	
	psi (kPa [kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ])	
	Front	33 (230 [2.3])
	Rear	33 (225 [2.3])
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J

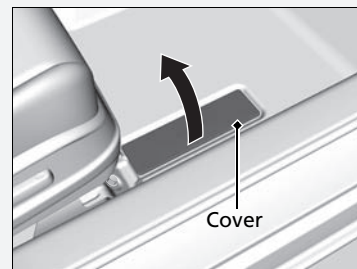
### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Motor Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and motor number are shown as follows.



#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Motor Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



## Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Audio System

*Bluetooth®* Audio

*Bluetooth®* HandsFreeLink®

Collision Mitigation Braking System™\*

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\*

Immobilizer System

Keyless Access System

Remote Transmitter

Wireless Charger\*

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

\* Not available on all models

In the U.S.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

## Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness codes, as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some States use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.

The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the 12-volt battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, set the power mode to ON, without turning the power system on. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the power system off for six hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Turn the power system on.

### Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the 12-volt battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.



5. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in **D**. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
6. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
7. Park the vehicle and leave the power system off for 40 minutes.

## ■ U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

***New Vehicle Limited Warranty*** – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty*** – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

***Seat Belt Limited Warranty*** – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

***Rust Perforation Limited Warranty*** – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

***Accessory Limited Warranty*** – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

***Replacement Parts Limited Warranty*** – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

**Replacement 12-Volt Battery Limited Warranty** – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

**Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty** – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

#### ■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

#### ■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Office of Transportation and Air Quality  
Compliance Division, Light-Duty Vehicle Group  
Attn: Warranty Complaints  
2000 Traverwood Drive  
Ann Arbor, MI 48105  
Email: [complianceinfo@epa.gov](mailto:complianceinfo@epa.gov)

## ■ Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit [www.techinfo.honda.com](http://www.techinfo.honda.com) for pricing and options.

## ■ For U.S. Owners

Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1-(800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

## ■ For Canadian Owners

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals.

They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's service manager or general manager. If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Honda Customer Services.

## U.S. Owners

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.  
Honda Automobile Customer Services  
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A  
1919 Torrance Blvd.  
Torrance, CA 90501-2746  
Tel: (800) 999-1009

## Canadian Owners

Honda Canada Inc.  
Customer Relations  
180 Honda Boulevard  
Markham, ON  
L6C 0H9  
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9  
Fax: 1-877-939-0909  
E-mail: Honda\_cr@ch.honda.com

## In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands

Bella International  
P.O. Box 190816  
San Juan, PR 00919-0816  
Tel: (787) 620-7546

## Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
  - **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Motor Number**  
P. 566
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

## Numbers

### 12-Volt Battery Charging System

Indicator ..... 76, 554

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 465

Accessories and Modifications ..... 533

Accessory Power Sockets ..... 172

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System ..... 426

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ..... 85, 429

### Additives

Coolant ..... 500, 502

Engine Oil ..... 495

Washer ..... 505

Additives, Engine Oil ..... 495

### Adjusting

Armrest ..... 166

Clock ..... 118

Front Seats ..... 160

Head Restraints ..... 163

Mirrors ..... 158

Steering Wheel ..... 157

Temperature ..... 103

Aha™ ..... 261

### Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)

Changing the Mode ..... 179

Defrosting the Windshield and

Windows ..... 180

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 527

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 179

Sensors ..... 182

Synchronized Mode ..... 181

Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 179

Air Pressure ..... 517, 565

Airbags ..... 45

Advanced Airbags ..... 51

After a Collision ..... 48

Airbag Care ..... 57

Event Data Recorder ..... 0

Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 48

Indicator ..... 55, 78

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator ..... 56

Sensors ..... 45

Side Airbags ..... 52

Side Curtain Airbags ..... 54

AM/FM Radio ..... 197, 237

Android Auto™ ..... 278

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 465

Indicator ..... 78

Apple CarPlay® ..... 274

Armrest ..... 166

Audio Remote Controls ..... 188

Audio System ..... 184

Adjusting the Sound ..... 195, 230

Audio/Information Screen ..... 191, 214

Audio/Information Touch Screen ..... 216

Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 186

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout .. 219

Closing Apps ..... 229

Display Setup ..... 196, 231

Error Messages ..... 283

General Information ..... 288

Home Screen ..... 222

Internet Radio ..... 205, 259, 261

iPod ..... 202, 252, 291

Limitations for Manual

Operation ..... 232, 341, 374

MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 199, 208, 249, 262

Playing a CD ..... 199, 249

Recommended CDs ..... 289

Recommended Devices ..... 291

Remote Controls ..... 188

Security Code ..... 187

Selecting an Audio Source ..... 232

Status Area ..... 228

Theft Protection ..... 187

USB Flash Drives ..... 208, 262, 291

USB Port ..... 185

Wallpaper Setup ..... 193, 220

Audio/Information Screen ..... 191, 214

Audio/Information Touch Screen ..... 216

Authorized Manuals ..... 573

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 129

Customize ..... 113, 307, 330

Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support

System) ..... 147

Indicator ..... 83

Automatic Intermittent Wipers ..... 152

Automatic Lighting ..... 145

Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 186

Average Fuel Economy ..... 102

Average Fuel Economy Records.....	104
Average Speed.....	103

## B

<b>Battery</b> .....	11, 525
12-Volt.....	525
12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator.....	76
Charging (12-Volt Battery).....	525
High Voltage.....	11, 462
Jump Starting.....	548
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt	
Battery).....	525
Maintenance (Replacing the Button	
Battery).....	526
<b>Belts (Seat)</b> .....	38
<b>Beverage Holders</b> .....	171
<b>Bluetooth® Audio</b> .....	211, 265
<b>Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®</b> .....	340, 371
<b>Booster Seats (For Children)</b> .....	69
<b>Brake System</b> .....	463
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	465
Brake Assist System.....	466
Fluid.....	504
Foot Brake.....	464
Indicator.....	74, 556
Parking Brake.....	463
<b>Brake System Indicator (Amber)</b> .....	74
<b>Brake System Indicator (Red)</b> .....	74
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)</b> ....	153
<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	506
Brake/Taillights, Rear Turn Signal Lights, and	
Rear Side Marker Lights.....	511
Fog Lights.....	508
Front Side Marker Lights.....	509
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	509
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights.....	510
Headlights.....	506
High-Mount Brake Light.....	513
Parking/Daytime Running Lights.....	510
Rear License Plate Lights.....	513
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	
Lights.....	510
Taillights and Back-Up Lights.....	512
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	564

## C

<b>Carbon Monoxide Gas</b> .....	70
<b>Cargo Area</b> .....	176
<b>Cargo Hook</b> .....	175
<b>Carrying Cargo</b> .....	411, 413
<b>CD Player</b> .....	199, 249
<b>Center Pocket</b> .....	170
<b>Certification Label</b> .....	566
<b>Changing Bulbs</b> .....	506
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	58
Childproof Door Locks.....	128
Emergency Trunk Opener.....	133
<b>Child Seat</b> .....	58
Booster Seats.....	69
Child Seat for Infants.....	60
Child Seat for Small Children.....	61
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat	
Belt.....	65
Larger Children.....	68
Rear-facing Child Seat.....	60
Selecting a Child Seat.....	62
Using a Tether.....	67
<b>Childproof Door Locks</b> .....	128
<b>Cleaning the Exterior</b> .....	530
<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	528
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	179
Changing the Mode.....	179
Defrosting the Windshield and	
Windows.....	180
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	527
Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode.....	179
Sensors.....	182
Synchronized Mode.....	181
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	179
<b>Clock</b> .....	118
<b>CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking</b>	
System™).....	467
<b>Coat Hook</b> .....	175
<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System™</b>	
(CMBS™).....	467
<b>Compass</b> .....	406
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	169
<b>Controls</b> .....	117

<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	500
Adding to the Radiator .....	501
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	500
Overheating .....	551
<b>Coolant (Inverter)</b> .....	502
<b>Cooling System</b> .....	500
<b>Creeping (Transmission)</b> .....	421
<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	171
<b>Customer Service Information</b> .....	574
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	108, 295, 314

## D

<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	150
<b>Dead Battery (12-Volt)</b> .....	548
<b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> .....	313, 337
<b>Defrosting the Windshield and Windows</b> .....	180
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	567
<b>Dimming</b>	
Headlights .....	144
Rearview Mirror .....	158
<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil)</b> .....	496
<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signal)</b> .....	144
<b>Display Button</b> .....	191, 214
<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	159
<b>Doors</b> .....	120
Auto Door Locking.....	129
Auto Door Unlocking .....	129
Door and Trunk Open Message.....	37
Keys.....	120

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside.....	126
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside.....	122
Lockout Prevention System .....	125
<b>DOT Tire Quality Grading</b> .....	519
<b>Driving</b> .....	409
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) .....	429
Braking.....	463
Shifting .....	422
Transmission.....	421
Turning on the Power.....	416
<b>Driving Position Memory System</b> .....	155
<b>Dust and Pollen Filter</b> .....	527

## E

<b>Eco Assist® System</b> .....	16
<b>Eco Drive Display</b> .....	17
<b>ECON Button</b> .....	424
<b>Elapsed Time</b> .....	102
<b>Electric Power Steering (EPS) System</b>	
Indicator .....	79, 556
<b>Electronic Stability Control (ESC)</b> .....	454
<b>Emergency</b> .....	561
<b>Emergency Trunk Opener</b> .....	133
<b>Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes)</b> .....	569
<b>Engine</b> .....	566
Coolant .....	500
Jump Starting .....	548
Oil .....	495

Remote Engine Start.....	418
--------------------------	-----

### Engine Coolant

Adding to the Radiator.....	501
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	500
Overheating .....	551

### Engine Oil

Adding.....	497
Checking.....	496
Displaying Oil Life.....	489
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	76, 554
Recommended Engine Oil .....	495

### EPS (Electric Power Steering)

System .....	79, 556
--------------	---------

<b>EV Button</b> .....	13
------------------------	----

<b>EV Indicator</b> .....	75
---------------------------	----

<b>EV Mode Indicator</b> .....	75
--------------------------------	----

### Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon

Monoxide).....	70
----------------	----

<b>Expanded View Driver's Mirror</b> .....	159
--	-----

<b>Exterior Care (Cleaning)</b> .....	530
---------------------------------------	-----

<b>Exterior Mirrors</b> .....	159
-------------------------------	-----

## F

<b>Features</b> .....	183
-----------------------	-----

### Filters

Dust and Pollen .....	527
Oil.....	498

<b>Flat Tire</b> .....	536
------------------------	-----

<b>Floor Mats</b> .....	529
-------------------------	-----



- Fluids
  - Brake..... 504
  - Engine Coolant..... 500
  - Inverter Coolant..... 502
  - Transmission..... 503
  - Windshield Washer..... 505
- FM/AM Radio** ..... 197, 237
- Foot Brake**..... 464
- Front Airbags (SRS)**..... 48
- Front Seats**
  - Adjusting..... 160
- Front Sensor Camera** ..... 427
- Fuel** ..... 28, 482
  - Economy ..... 484
  - Gauge ..... 98
  - Instant Fuel Economy..... 103
  - Low Fuel Indicator ..... 78
  - Range..... 102
  - Recommendation ..... 482
  - Refueling ..... 482
- Fuel Economy**..... 484
- Fuel Fill Cap**..... 28, 483
  - Message..... 555
- Fuel Fill Door**..... 28, 483
- Fuses**..... 558
  - Inspecting and Changing..... 560
  - Locations..... 558, 559
- G**
- Gasoline (Fuel)**
  - Economy ..... 484
  - Gauge..... 98
  - Information ..... 482
  - Instant Fuel Economy ..... 103
  - Low Fuel Indicator ..... 78
  - Refueling..... 482
- Gauges** ..... 98
- Glass (care)**..... 528, 531
- Glove Box**..... 169
- H**
- Halogen Bulbs** ..... 506
- Handling the Unexpected**..... 535
- HandsFreeLink® (HFL)**..... 340, 371
  - Auto Answer..... 355
  - Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History..... 357, 385
  - Automatic Transferring..... 355
  - Displaying Messages..... 400
  - Displaying Text Messages ..... 368
  - HFL Buttons..... 340, 371
  - HFL Menus..... 342, 375
  - HFL Status Display ..... 341, 373
  - In Case of Emergency..... 404
  - Limitations for Manual Operation .... 341, 374
  - Making a Call..... 361, 393
  - Options During a Call ..... 366, 397
  - Phone Setup..... 347, 380
  - Phonebook Phonetic Modification..... 389
  - Receiving a Call..... 365, 396
  - Receiving a Text Message..... 367
  - Receiving a Text Message/E-mail ..... 398
  - Ring Tone ..... 356, 384
  - Selecting a Mail Account..... 399
  - Speed Dial ..... 358, 386
  - To Create a Security PIN ..... 354
  - To Set Up Text Message Options..... 352
  - To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options .. 383
- Hazard Warning Button** ..... 4
- HD Radio™** ..... 237
- Head Restraints** ..... 163
- Headlights** ..... 144
  - Aiming..... 506
  - Auto High-Beam ..... 147
  - Automatic Operation ..... 145
  - Dimming..... 144, 150
  - Operating ..... 144
- Heaters (Seat)**..... 177, 178
- High Beam Indicator** ..... 81
- High Voltage Battery** ..... 462
- Hill Start Assist System**..... 420
- HomeLink® Universal Transceiver** ..... 338
- HondaLink®** ..... 267
- Hybrid Vehicle**
  - SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mode Drive)..... 10

<b>I</b>	
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Engine and Motor .....	566
Vehicle Identification .....	566
<b>Illumination Control</b>	
Knob .....	153
<b>Immobilizer System</b> .....	134
Indicator .....	82
<b>Indicators</b> .....	74
12-Volt Battery Charging System .....	76, 554
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber) ....	85
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	
(Green) .....	85, 430
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	78
Auto High-Beam (Green) .....	83
Brake System (Amber) .....	74
Brake System (Red) .....	74
Collision Mitigation Braking System™	
(CMBS™) .....	87
ECON Mode .....	83, 424
Electric Power Steering (EPS)	
System .....	79, 556
EV .....	75
EV Mode .....	75
Fog Light .....	81
High Beam .....	81
Immobilizer System .....	82
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	
(Amber) .....	86
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	
(Green) .....	86, 449
Lights On .....	81
Low Fuel .....	78
Low Oil Pressure .....	76, 554
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS .....	80, 458, 460
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	76, 555
Parking Brake and Brake System .....	74, 556
POWER SYSTEM .....	75
READY .....	75
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) .....	84
Seat Belt Reminder .....	39, 77
Security System Alarm .....	82
Shift Lever Position .....	77
Smart Entry System .....	83
SPORT Mode .....	77, 425
Supplemental Restraint System .....	55, 78
System Message .....	81
Transmission .....	77
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning .....	81
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®)	
System .....	79, 454
VSA® OFF .....	79, 455
<b>Information</b> .....	563
<b>Instant Fuel Economy</b> .....	103
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	73
Brightness Control .....	153
<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	167
<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	158
<b>Inverter Coolant</b> .....	502
<b>iPod</b> .....	202, 252

<b>J</b>	
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	548

<b>K</b>	
<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	121
<b>Keyless Lockout Prevention</b> .....	125
<b>Keys</b> .....	120
Lockout Prevention .....	125
Number Tag .....	121
Rear Door Won't Open .....	128
Remote Engine Start .....	418
Remote Transmitter .....	124
Types and Functions .....	120
Valet Key .....	132
<b>Kickdown (Transmission)</b> .....	421

<b>L</b>	
<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	447
<b>LaneWatch™</b> .....	456
<b>Language (HFL)</b> .....	341, 373
<b>LATCH (Child Seats)</b> .....	63
<b>Lights</b> .....	144, 506
Auto High-Beam .....	147
Automatic .....	145
Bulb Replacement .....	506
Daytime Running Lights .....	150
Fog Lights .....	146
High Beam Indicator .....	81
Interior .....	167

Light Switches .....	144	Radiator .....	501	Oil (Engine) .....	495
Lights On Indicator .....	81	Remote Transmitter .....	526	Adding .....	497
Turn Signals .....	144	Replacing Light Bulbs .....	506	Checking .....	496
<b>Load Limits</b> .....	413	Safety .....	487	Displaying Oil Life .....	489
<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	120	Service Items .....	491	Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	76, 554
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	129	Tires .....	516	Recommended Engine Oil .....	495
Childproof Door Locks .....	128	Transmission Fluid .....	503	Viscosity .....	495
From Inside .....	126	Under the Hood .....	493	<b>Open Source Licences</b> .....	294
From Outside .....	122	<b>Malfunction Indicator Lamp</b> .....	76, 555	<b>Opening/Closing</b> .....	
Keys .....	120	<b>Map Lights</b> .....	168	Hood .....	494
Using a Key .....	125	<b>Maximum Load Limit</b> .....	413	Moonroof .....	140
<b>Lockout Prevention System</b> .....	125	<b>Meters, Gauges</b> .....	98	Power Windows .....	137
<b>Low Battery Charge (12-Volt)</b> .....	554	<b>Mirrors</b> .....	158	Trunk .....	130
<b>Low Fuel Indicator</b> .....	78	Adjusting .....	158	<b>Outside Temperature Display</b> .....	103
<b>Low Oil Pressure Indicator</b> .....	76, 554	Door .....	159	<b>Overheating</b> .....	551
<b>Low Smart Entry Remote Signal</b>		Exterior .....	159		
<b>Strength</b> .....	121	Interior Rearview .....	158		
<b>Lower Anchors</b> .....	63	<b>Modifications (and Accessories)</b> .....	533	<b>P</b>	
<b>Luggage (Maximum Load Limit)</b> .....	413	<b>Moonroof</b> .....	140	<b>Pandora®</b> .....	207, 259
		<b>Motor Number</b> .....	566	<b>Panic Mode</b> .....	136
		<b>MP3</b> .....	199, 208, 249, 262	<b>Parking</b> .....	475
		<b>Multi-Information Display</b> .....	100	<b>Parking Brake</b> .....	463
		<b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> .....	480	<b>Parking Brake and Brake System</b>	
				Indicator .....	74, 556
<b>M</b>				<b>Parking Sensor System</b> .....	476
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	485			<b>Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator</b> .....	56
12-Volt Battery .....	525	<b>N</b>		<b>Passing Indicators</b> .....	144
Brake Fluid .....	504	<b>Numbers (Identification)</b> .....	566	<b>Playing Bluetooth® Audio</b> .....	211, 265
Cleaning .....	528			<b>POWER Button</b> .....	141
Climate Control System .....	527			<b>Power System</b>	
Coolant .....	500, 502	<b>O</b>		Turning on .....	416
Maintenance Minder™ .....	489	<b>Odometer</b> .....	102		
Oil .....	496				
Precautions .....	486				

POWER SYSTEM Indicator .....	75
Power Windows .....	137
POWER/CHARGE Gauge .....	99
Precautions While Driving	
Rain .....	421
Pregnant Women .....	43
Puncture (Tire) .....	536

## R

Radiator .....	501
Radio (AM/FM) .....	197, 237
Radio (SiriusXM®) .....	241
Radio Data System (RDS) .....	198, 240
Range .....	102
RDS (Radio Data System) .....	198, 240
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) .....	569
READY Indicator .....	75
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror	
Button .....	154
Rear Seat Heaters .....	178
Rearview Mirror .....	158
Refueling .....	482
Fuel Gauge .....	98
Gasoline .....	482, 564
Low Fuel Indicator .....	78
Regulations .....	460, 519, 567
Remote Engine Start .....	418
Remote Transmitter .....	124
Replacement	
Battery .....	526

Bulbs .....	506
Fuses .....	558, 559
Tires .....	522
Wiper Blade Rubber .....	514
Reporting Safety Defects .....	568
Resetting a Trip Meter .....	102
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) .....	443
Indicator .....	84
On and Off .....	444

## S

Safe Driving .....	33
Safety Check .....	37
Safety Labels .....	71
Safety Message .....	1
Seat Belts .....	38
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor .....	42
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .....	40
Checking .....	44
Fastening .....	41
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat	
Belt .....	65
Pregnant Women .....	43
Reminder .....	39
Warning Indicator .....	39, 77
Seat Heaters .....	177, 178
Seats .....	160
Adjusting .....	160
Front Seats .....	160
Seat Heaters .....	177, 178

Security System .....	134
Immobilizer System Indicator .....	82
Security System Alarm Indicator .....	82
SEL/RESET Button .....	101
Selecting a Child Seat .....	62
Selector Knob (Audio) .....	190
Shift Lever .....	27, 422
Operation .....	27, 423
Releasing .....	550
Won't Move .....	550
Shift Lever Position Indicator .....	77, 423
Shift Lever Positions .....	422
Shifting (Transmission) .....	422
Shoulder Anchor .....	42
Side Airbags .....	52
Side Curtain Airbags .....	54
Siri® Eyes Free .....	282
SiriusXM® Radio .....	241
Smart Entry Remote .....	418
Smart Entry with Push Button Start	
System .....	122
Snow Tires .....	524
Song By Voice™ (SBV) .....	255
Spark Plugs .....	564
Specifications .....	564
Specified Fuel .....	482, 564
Speedometer .....	98
SPORT Mode .....	425
SPORT Mode Indicator .....	77, 425
SRS Airbags (Airbags) .....	48

<b>Steering Wheel</b>	
Adjusting .....	157
<b>Stopping</b> .....	475
<b>Summer Tires</b> .....	524
<b>Sunglasses Holder</b> .....	176
<b>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)</b> .....	48
<b>Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)</b> .....	4, 5, 141
<b>SYNC Mode</b> .....	181
<b>System Message Indicator</b> .....	81

## T

<b>Temperature</b>	
Outside Temperature Display .....	103
<b>Temperature Sensor</b> .....	103, 182
<b>Time (Adjusting)</b> .....	118
<b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b> .....	458
Indicator .....	80, 557
<b>Tire Repair Kit</b> .....	537
<b>Tires</b> .....	516
Air Pressure .....	517, 565
Checking and Maintaining .....	516
Inspection .....	516
Labeling .....	517
Puncture (Flat Tire) .....	536
Regulations .....	519
Rotation .....	523
Summer .....	524
Tire Chains .....	524

Tire Repair Kit .....	537
Wear Indicators .....	521
Winter .....	524
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	415
<b>Towing Your Vehicle</b> .....	415
Emergency .....	561
<b>TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)</b> .....	458
Indicator .....	80, 557
<b>Transmission</b> .....	421, 422
Creeping .....	421
Fluid .....	503
Kickdown .....	421
Operating the Shift Lever .....	423
Shift Lever Position Indicator .....	77, 423
Shifting .....	422
<b>Trip Meter</b> .....	102
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	535
Blown Fuse .....	558, 559
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	31
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	32
Emergency Towing .....	561
Noise When Braking .....	32
Overheating .....	551
Power System Won't Start .....	545
Puncture/Flat Tire .....	536
Rear Door Won't Open .....	31, 128
Shift Lever Won't Move .....	550
Warning Indicators .....	74
<b>Trunk</b> .....	130
Lid .....	130

Light Bulb .....	564
Main Switch .....	132
<b>Turn Signals</b> .....	144
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	81
<b>Turn-by-Turn Directions</b> .....	103
<b>Turning on the Power</b> .....	416
Does Not Activate .....	545
Jump Starting .....	548
Remote Engine Start .....	418

## U

<b>Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	122
<b>Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside</b> .....	21
<b>USB Flash Drives</b> .....	208, 262, 291
<b>USB Port</b> .....	185
<b>Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System</b> .....	122

## V

<b>Valet Key</b> .....	132
<b>Vanity Mirrors</b> .....	7
<b>Vehicle Identification Number</b> .....	566
<b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®)</b> .....	454
OFF Button .....	455
Off Indicator .....	79
System Indicator .....	79
<b>Ventilation</b> .....	179
<b>Viscosity (Oil)</b> .....	495, 565

<b>Voice Control Operation</b> .....	233
Audio Commands.....	235
Climate Control Commands.....	236
General Commands.....	236
Music Search Commands.....	236
On Screen Commands .....	236
Phone Commands .....	235
Useful Commands .....	235
Voice Portal Screen .....	234
Voice Recognition .....	233
<b>VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist)</b> .....	454

Wiper Blades .....	514
Wipers and Washers.....	151
<b>Winter Tires</b> .....	
Snow Tires.....	524
Tire Chains .....	524
<b>Wipers and Washers</b> .....	151
Automatic Intermittent Wipers.....	152
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....	514
<b>Wireless Charger</b> .....	173
<b>WMA</b> .....	199, 208, 249, 262
<b>Worn Tires</b> .....	516

## W

<b>Wallpaper</b> .....	193, 220
<b>Warning and Information Messages</b> .....	88
<b>Warning Indicator On/Blinking</b> .....	554
<b>Warning Labels</b> .....	71
<b>Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately)</b> .....	571
<b>Watts</b> .....	564
<b>Wear Indicators (Tire)</b> .....	521
<b>Wi-Fi Connection</b> .....	272
<b>Window Washers</b> .....	151
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	505
Switch .....	151
<b>Windows (Opening and Closing)</b> .....	137
<b>Windshield</b> .....	151
Cleaning.....	528, 531
Defrosting/Defogging .....	180
Washer Fluid.....	505